



BERKELEY
LIBRARY
UNIVERSITY OF
CALIFORNIA

MATH-
STAT.
LIBRARY

MATH+
STAT.
LIBRARY

G. B. Jeffery

With kind regard

from M. J. M. Hill.

THE THEORY OF PROPORTION

THE THEORY OF PROPORTION

BY

M. J. M. HILL, M.A., LL.D., Sc.D., F.R.S.

ASTOR PROFESSOR OF MATHEMATICS IN
THE UNIVERSITY OF LONDON

LONDON

CONSTABLE AND COMPANY, LTD.

1914

9/96 Gift

PREFACE

THIS little book is the outcome of the effort annually renewed over a long period to make clear to my students the principles on which the Theory of Proportion is based, with a view to its application to the study of the Properties of Similar Figures.

Its content formed recently the subject matter of a course of lectures to Teachers, delivered at University College, under an arrangement with the London County Council, and it is now being published in the hope of interesting a wider circle.

At the commencement of my career as a teacher I was accustomed, in accordance with the then established practice, to take for granted the definition of proportion as given by Euclid in the Fifth Definition of the Fifth Book of his *Elements** and to supply proofs of the other properties of proportion required in the Sixth Book which were valid only when the magnitudes considered were commensurable. Dissatisfied with the results of a method which could have no claim to be considered logical, after trying some other modes of exposition, I turned to the syllabus of the Fifth Book drawn up by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. But again I found this hard to explain, and it was evident that my students could not grasp the method as a whole, even when they were able to understand its steps singly.

After prolonged study I found that, in addition to the difficulty arising out of Euclid's notation, which is a matter of form and not of substance, and the difficulty that Euclid does not sufficiently define ratio, two reasons could be assigned for the great difficulty of his argument.

(1) Of the long array of definitions prefixed to the Fifth Book there are only two which effectively count. One of these, the Fifth, is the test for deciding when two ratios are equal; and the other, the Seventh, is the test for distinguishing

* The substance of the Fifth Book is usually attributed to Eudoxus.

QA
48
H5
MA

between unequal ratios. They are intimately related, but when once stated they can be treated as independent.

Now it can be seen at once that if the test for deciding when two ratios are equal is a good and sound one, it should be possible to deduce from it all the properties of equal ratios, and in order to obtain these properties it should not be necessary to employ the test for distinguishing between unequal ratios.

But Euclid frequently employs this last-mentioned test, or propositions depending on it, to prove properties of equal ratios. In fact, it is not at all easy for any one trying to follow the course of his argument to see whether it leads naturally to the employment of the Fifth or of the Seventh Definition, or a proposition depending on the Seventh Definition. Euclid's proofs do not run on the same lines, and are so difficult and intricate that they have almost entirely fallen out of use. It will be shown in this book that *all the properties of equal ratios can be proved by the aid of the Fifth Definition, and that the Seventh Definition is not required.*

This is effected, without departing from the spirit or the rigour of Euclid's argument, by assimilating Euclid's proofs of those propositions in which the use of the Seventh Definition is directly or indirectly involved to his proofs of those propositions in which he employs the Fifth Definition only.

(2) I think it will appear to any one who reads this book that it is in a high degree probable that the two assumptions

(i) If $A=B$, then $(A:C)=(B:C)$,

and (ii) If $A>B$, then $(A:C)>(B:C)$

form the real bed-rock of Euclid's ideas, and that he deduced his Fifth and Seventh Definitions from these two fundamental assumptions as his starting-point, but that he finally re-arranged his argument so as to take the Fifth and Seventh Definitions as his starting-point and then deduced the above-mentioned assumptions as propositions.

An argument which does not follow the course of discovery is frequently very difficult to follow. De Morgan, in his *Theory of the Connexion of Number and Magnitude*, gives reasons for thinking that Euclid arrived at the conditions in the Fifth and Seventh Definitions from the consideration of a model representing a set of equidistant columns with a set of

equidistant railings in front of them, and the relation between the model and the object it represented. However that may be it cannot, I think, be denied that these definitions appearing at the commencement of Euclid's argument without explanation present grave difficulties to the student. I hope to show that these difficulties can be removed and the whole argument presented in a simple form.

I have given a few geometrical illustrations in this book, some of which are not included in either of the two editions of my book entitled *The Contents of the Fifth and Sixth Books of Euclid's Elements*, published by the Cambridge University Press. I desire, however, to draw special attention to the very beautiful applications of Stolz's *Theorem* (Art. 40) to the proof of the proposition that the areas of circles are proportional to the squares on their radii (Euc. XII. 2), see Art. 61; and also to the proof of the same proposition on strictly Euclidean lines, for both of which I am indebted to my friend Mr. Rose-Innes (see Art. 61a). These proofs differ from Euclid's in a most important particular, viz. they do not assume the existence of the fourth proportional to three magnitudes of which the first and second are of the same kind. I think that any one who has tried to understand Euclid's argument will find the proofs here given much simpler and more direct. Euclid uses a *reductio ad absurdum*. As against methods other than Euclid's the infinitesimals are, by the aid of Euclid X. 1, handled in a manner which is far more convincing, at any rate to those who are commencing the study of infinitesimals.

I am aware that in bringing this subject forward, and in suggesting that a treatment of the Theory of Proportion, which is valid when the magnitudes concerned are incommensurable, should be included in the mathematical curriculum, I have immense prejudices to overcome.

On the one hand it is the outcome of all experience in teaching that Euclid's presentation of the subject is beyond the comprehension of most people whether old or young, a view with which I am in complete agreement. The matter is regarded as *res judicata*, and most teachers refuse to look at Euclid's work, or anything claiming kinship with it.

On the other hand, in suggesting any modification of

Euclid's argument, I have before me the dictum of that great Master of Logic, Augustus de Morgan, who said, "This same book (the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements*) and the logic of Aristotle are the two most unobjectionable and unassailable treatises which ever were written," and if that be so the usefulness of my work would be in dispute. What is presented here is a modification of Euclid's method, which requires for its understanding a knowledge of Elementary Algebra. I find no difficulty in explaining the first nine chapters, which form Part I., to students who are commencing the study of the properties of similar figures; and whose intellectual equipment in Geometry includes a knowledge of the subject matter of the first four books of Euclid's *Elements*. As I have ventured to make several criticisms on Euclid's argument, I hope it will not be supposed that I do not appreciate either the magnitude or the ingenuity of the work. Its ingenuity is in fact one of the obstacles, if not the greatest obstacle to its finding a place in the mathematical curriculum. What is claimed for the argument set out here is that an easier road to the same results has been found which is not deficient in rigour to that contained in the Euclidean text. Dedekind says in his *Essays on Number** that it was especially from the Fifth Definition of the Fifth Book that he drew the inspiration which led him to the theory of the "cut" or "section"† in the system of rational numbers, a theory which is fundamental in the Calculus. The propositions in this book furnish a number of easily understood examples of the "cut" and thus prepare the student for the study of irrational numbers in the Calculus. Its subject matter is thus very closely linked with modern ideas and well worthy of study.

The book is arranged in three parts. The first part, Chapters I.-IX., contains an elementary course, which can be explained to any one with average mathematical ability. The fourth, fifth, and sixth chapters should be carefully studied. Any difficulty that there may be in the first part will be found in these chapters. The table of contents gives a clear idea of their subject matter, and the main points that have to be borne in mind in the subsequent argument are summed up in Article

* Translated by Beman, p. 40.

† Schnitt.

41. The frequent use of Archimedes' Axiom in this work is of great assistance to students when they enter upon the study of the Calculus.

The second part, Chapters X. and XI., is suitable for students preparing for an Honours Course and for Teachers. It is too difficult for an elementary course, and is not intended for those who are not really interested in mathematical study.

The third part, Chapter XII., is a commentary on the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements*, and contains remarks on matters which are of interest to those who are concerned with the history of the ideas involved.

This commentary is not intended to be a complete one, but deals only with some matters which have not been noticed in the earlier chapters. The reader who is interested in this part of the subject should consult Sir T. L. Heath's Edition of Euclid's *Elements*.

My acknowledgments are due to the Syndics of the Cambridge University Press for their courtesy in permitting me to use the methods employed in the two editions of my *Contents of the Fifth and Sixth Books of Euclid's Elements*; and to the Editor of the *Mathematical Gazette* for permission to use a portion of the material of my Presidential Address to the London Branch of the Mathematical Association, published in the July and October numbers of the *Gazette* for 1912.

I am also under great obligation to De Morgan's *Treatise on the Connexion of Number and Magnitude*, and especially in connection with the matter of Chapter XII. to Sir T. L. Heath's great edition of Euclid's *Elements*.

Some further information will be found in my two papers on the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements* in the *Cambridge Philosophical Transactions*, Vol. XVI., Part IV., and Vol. XIX., Part II.

M. J. M. HILL.

*University of London,
University College, 1913.*

CONTENTS

PART I

CHAPTER I

ARTICLES 1-3

Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND.

	PAGE
Arts. 1, 2. Examples of Magnitudes of the same kind	1
Art. 3. Characteristics of Magnitudes of the same kind	1

CHAPTER II

ARTICLES 4-12

Propositions relating to Magnitudes and their Multiples.

Art. 4. Statement of the Propositions	4
Art. 5. Prop. I. (Euc. V. 1)	4
$n(A+B+C+\dots)=nA+nB+nC+\dots$	
Art. 6. Prop. II. (Euc. V. 2)	5
$(a+b+c+\dots)N=aN+bN+cN+\dots$	
Art. 7. Prop. III.	6
$(r(s))A=r(sA)=s(rA)=(s(r))A.$	
Corollary.	
$s[\{n(r)\}A]=r[\{n(s)\}A].$	
Art. 8. Prop. IV. (Euc. V. 5)	7
If $A > B$, then $r(A-B)=rA-rB.$	
Art. 9. Prop. V. (Euc. V. 6)	7
If $a > b$, then $(a-b)R=aR-bR.$	
Art. 10. Prop. VI.	7
If $A > B$, then $rA > rB.$	
If $A = B$, then $rA = rB.$	
If $A < B$, then $rA < rB.$	
If $rA > rB$, then $A > B.$	
If $rA = rB$, then $A = B.$	
If $rA < rB$, then $A < B.$	

	PAGE
Art. 11. Prop. VII.	8
If $a > b$, then $aR > bR$.	
If $a = b$, then $aR = bR$.	
If $a < b$, then $aR < bR$.	
If $aR > bR$, then $a > b$.	
If $aR = bR$, then $a = b$.	
If $aR < bR$, then $a < b$.	
Art. 12. Prop. VIII. If X, Y, Z are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $X > Y + Z$, then an integer t exists such that $X > tZ > Y$	9
Corollary. If A, B, C are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $A > B$, then integers n, t exist such that $nA > tC > nB$	10

CHAPTER III

ARTICLES 13-18

*The relations between Multiples of the same Magnitude.
Commensurable Magnitudes.*

Art. 13. The ratio of one multiple of a magnitude to another multiple of the same magnitude	11
The ratio of nA to rA is defined to be $\frac{n}{r}$.	
Arts. 14-17. Geometrical Illustrations	13
Art. 18. If $A = aG, B = bG, C = cG$	16
and if $A > B$, then $(A:C) > (B:C)$;	
if $A = B$, then $(A:C) = (B:C)$;	
if $A < B$, then $(A:C) < (B:C)$.	

CHAPTER IV

ARTICLES 19-21

*Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND which are NOT Multiples of the same
magnitude. Incommensurable Magnitudes.*

Art. 19. Magnitudes of the same kind exist which have no common measure	18
Art. 20. The diagonal and side of a square have no common measure	18
Art. 21. Consideration of the question " Whether two magnitudes of the same kind which have no common measure can have a ratio to one another ? " If so, it cannot be a rational number	19

	PAGE
Art. 37. Definition of Unequal Ratios	35
Art. 38. The test for distinguishing between Unequal Ratios	36
Art. 39. If $A > B$ then a rational number can be found which lies between $(A:C)$ and $(B:C)$	37
Art. 40. Simplification of the Test for Equal Ratios (Stolz's Theorem)	37
Prop. XI. If all values of r, s which make $sA > rB$ also make $sC > rD$, and if all values of r, s which make $sA < rB$ also make $sC < rD$, then if any values of r, s , say $r = r_1, s = s_1$, exist which make $s_1A = r_1B$, then must also $s_1C = r_1D$.	
Magnitudes in Proportion.	
Art. 41. Recapitulation of the chief points of the preceding theory	39

CHAPTER VII

ARTICLES 42-49

Properties of Equal Ratios. First Group of Propositions.

Art. 42. Statement of the Propositions	40
Art. 43. Prop. XII.	40
If $(A:B) = (C:D)$,	
then $(rA:sB) = (rC:sD)$. Euc. V. 4.	
Art. 44. Prop. XIII.	41
If $(A:B) = (C:D)$,	
then $(B:A) = (D:C)$. Euc. V. Cor. to 4.	
Art. 45. Prop. XIV. If $(A:B) = (C:D) = (E:F)$, and if all the magnitudes are of the same kind, then $(A:B) = (A + C + E : B + D + F)$. Euc. V. 12.	42
Art. 46. Prop. XV.	43
$(A:B) = (nA:nB)$. Euc. V. 15.	
Art. 47. Prop. XVI.	43
If $(A:B) = (X:Y)$,	
then $(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y)$. Euc. V. 18.	
Art. 48. Prop. XVII.	44
If $(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y)$,	
then $(A:B) = (X:Y)$. Euc. V. 17.	
Art. 49. Geometrical illustration (Euc. VI. 1)	45
The ratio of the areas of two triangles of equal altitudes is equal to the ratio of the lengths of their bases.	

CHAPTER VIII

ARTICLES 50-53

Properties of Equal Ratios. Second Group of Propositions.

Art. 50. Statement of the Propositions	48
--	----

CONTENTS

xvii

	PAGE
Art. 51. Prop. XVIII. If A, B, C, D be four magnitudes of the same kind	49
and if $(A:B)=(C:D)$,	
then $(A:C)=(B:D)$.	Euc. V. 16.
Corollary. If, with the data of the proposition,	
$A > C$, then $B > D$;	
but if $A = C$, then $B = D$;	
and if $A < C$, then $B < D$.	Euc. V. 14.
Art. 52. Prop. XIX.	50
If $(A:B)=(T:U)$,	
and if $(B:C)=(U:V)$,	
then $(A:C)=(T:V)$.	Euc. V. 22.
Corollary. If, with the data of the proposition,	
$A > C$, then $T > V$;	
but if $A = C$, then $T = V$;	
and if $A < C$, then $T < V$.	Euc. V. 20.
Art. 53. Prop. XX.	52
If $(A:B)=(U:V)$,	
and if $(B:C)=(T:U)$,	
then $(A:C)=(T:V)$.	Euc. V. 23.
Corollary. If, with the data of the proposition,	
$A > C$, then $T > V$.	
but if $A = C$, then $T = V$;	
and if $A < C$, then $T < V$.	Euc. V. 21.

CHAPTER IX

ARTICLES 54-57

Properties of Equal Ratios. Third Group of Propositions.

Art. 54. Statement of the Propositions	54
Art. 55. Prop. XXI.	54
If $(A + C:B + D)=(C:D)$,	
then $(A:B)=(C:D)$.	Euc. V. 19.
Art. 56. Prop. XXII.	55
If $(A:C)=(X:Z)$,	
and if $(B:C)=(Y:Z)$,	
then $(A + B:C)=(X + Y:Z)$.	Euc. V. 24.
Art. 57. Prop. XXIII.	55
If A, B, C, D are four magnitudes of the same kind, if A be the greatest of them,	
and if $(A:B)=(C:D)$,	
then $A + D > B + C$.	Euc. V. 25.

PART II

CHAPTER X

ARTICLES 58-67

Geometrical applications of Stolz's Theorem.

	PAGE
Art. 58. Some subsidiary propositions	57
If A and B be two magnitudes of the same kind, of which A is the larger, and if from A more than its half be taken away, and if from the remainder left more than its half be taken away, and so on; then if this process be continued long enough, the remainder left will be less than B (Euc. X. 1).	
Art. 59. If a regular polygon of 2^n sides be inscribed in a circle, then the part of the circular area outside the polygon can be made as small as we please by making n large enough (included in Euc. XII. 2)	58
Art. 60. The areas of similar polygons inscribed in two circles are proportional to the areas of the squares described on the radii of the circles (Euc. XII. 1)	60
Arts. 61, 61a, 61b. The areas of circles are proportional to the squares described on their radii (Euc. XII. 2)	61
Art. 62. If C_1, C_2 represent the contents of two figures, such that it is possible to inscribe in C_1 an infinite series of figures P_1 , and in C_2 an infinite series of corresponding figures P_2 , such that $(P_1:P_2)$ has a fixed value $(S_1:S_2)$, and that $C_1 - P_1$ and $C_2 - P_2$ can be made as small as we please, then will	65
$(C_1:C_2) = (S_1:S_2)$.	
Art. 63. The circumferences of circles are proportional to their radii	66
Art. 64. The area of the radian sector of a circle is equal to half the area of the square described on its radius	66
Art. 65. The area of a circle whose radius is r is πr^2	68
Art. 66. The volumes of tetrahedra standing on the same base are proportional to their altitudes	68
Art. 67. The volumes of tetrahedra are proportional to their bases and altitudes jointly	71

CHAPTER XI

ARTICLES 68-70

Further remarks on Irrational Numbers. The existence of the Fourth Proportional.

Art. 68. Separation of the system of rational numbers into two classes	74
--	----

CONTENTS

xix

	PAGE
Art. 69. Separation of the points on a straight line into two classes. The Cantor-Dedekind Axiom	75
Art. 70. The existence of the Fourth Proportional	76
Prop. XXIV. If A and B be magnitudes of the same kind, and if C be any third magnitude, then there exists a fourth magnitude Z of the same kind as C such that $(A:B)=(C:Z)$.	

PART III

CHAPTER XII

ARTICLES 71-100

Commentary on the Fifth Book of Euclid's Elements.

Art. 71. The Third and Fourth Definitions	81
Art. 72. The Fifth Definition.	82
Art. 73. The idea of ratio need not be introduced into the Fifth Definition. Relative Multiple Scales	82
Arts. 74-77. Study of the conditions appearing in the Fifth Definition. Determination of those which are independent	85
Arts. 78-79. The Seventh Definition. Reduction to its simplest form	88
Art. 80. A point arising out of the Seventh Definition not dealt with by Euclid	89
Arts. 81-82. Statement of the evidence as to Euclid's view of ratio	91
Art. 83. The First Group of Propositions. Magnitudes and their Multiples (Euc. V. 1, 2, 3, 5, 6)	93
Art. 84. The Second Group of Propositions	94
Properties of Equal Ratios deduced directly from the Fifth Definition (Euc. V. 4, 7, 11, 12, 15, 17).	
Art. 85. Deduction of Euc. X. 6 from Euc. V. 17 without assuming that a magnitude may be divided into any number of equal parts	94
Art. 86. The Third Group of Propositions	96
Properties of Unequal Ratios depending on the Seventh Definition (Euc. V. 8, 10, 13).	
Art. 87. Euc. V. 8	97
Art. 88. Euc. V. 10	97
Art. 89. The Fourth Group of Propositions	98
Properties of Equal Ratios depending on both the Fifth and Seventh Definitions (Euc. V. 9, 14, 16, and 18-25).	
Art. 90. Independence of the Fifth and Seventh Definitions	99

	PAGE
Art. 91. Comparison of the proofs of Euc. V. 14 and 16 with those given in this book	99
Art. 92. Euc. V. 18. Euclid's assumption of the existence of the Fourth Proportional	100
Art. 93. The relation between Euc. V. 20 and 22	101
Art. 94. The relation between Euc. V. 21 and 23	101
Art. 95. The Compounding or Multiplication of Ratios. The order of the multiplication does not affect the result (Euc. V. 23)	102
Art. 96. Addition of Ratios (Euc. V. 24)	103
Art. 97. The importance of Euc. V. 25	103
Art. 98-99. Deduction from Euc. V. 25 of the propositions that as n tends to $+\infty$, a^n tends to $+\infty$ if $a > 1$; but to $+0$, if $0 < a < 1$	104
Art. 100. The relation between the last-mentioned limit and Euc. X. 1	105
INDEX	107

THE THEORY OF PROPORTION

PART I

CHAPTER I

ARTICLES 1-3

Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND.

ARTICLE 1

No attempt will be made to give a general definition of the term "Magnitude." It is sufficient to give a number of examples; e.g. lengths, areas, volumes, hours, minutes, seconds, weights, etc., are called magnitudes.

ARTICLE 2

It is, however, important to make precise the sense in which the term

"magnitudes of the same kind"

will be employed.

Some examples of what is meant will first be given.

All lengths are magnitudes *of the same kind*.

All areas are magnitudes *of the same kind*.

All volumes are magnitudes *of the same kind*.

All intervals of time are magnitudes *of the same kind*.

ARTICLE 3

Characteristics of Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND.

In the next place the characteristics of magnitudes *of the same kind* will be specified.*

* Stolz's account of the properties of absolute magnitudes in his *Allgemeine Arithmetik*, Erster Theil, page 69, is followed in essentials.

These will be readily admitted if we consider the magnitudes to be segments of lines, or areas, or volumes, or weights, etc.

A system of magnitudes is said to be *of the same kind* when the magnitudes possess the following characteristics :

- (1) Any two magnitudes *of the same kind* may be regarded as equal or unequal.

In the latter case one of them is said to be the smaller, and the other the larger of the two.

- (2) Two magnitudes *of the same kind* can be added together. The resulting magnitude is a magnitude *of the same kind* as the original magnitudes.

This property makes it possible to form multiples of a magnitude.

For denoting any magnitude by A , then $A+A$ is a magnitude *of the same kind* as A . It will be denoted by $2A$.

Then $2A+A$ is a magnitude *of the same kind* as A .

It will be denoted by $3A$. And so on, if r denote any positive integer, $rA+A$ is a magnitude *of the same kind* as A and will be denoted by $(r+1)A$.

The Commutative and Associative Laws apply to the Addition of magnitudes *of the same kind*. So that

$$A+B=B+A. \text{ The Commutative Law.}$$

$$(A+B)+C=A+(B+C). \text{ The Associative Law.}$$

These laws can be conveniently illustrated by taking the case in which A , B and C represent lengths.

- (3) If A and B be two magnitudes *of the same kind*, and A be greater than B , then another magnitude X *of the same kind* as A and B exists such that

$$B+X=A.$$

This may also be written

$$X=A-B.$$

This can be illustrated by taking for A and B two lengths of which A is the longer. If, then, a length equal to B be cut off from A the remainder left is X .

- (4) If A be any magnitude, and n any positive integer whatever, then a magnitude X of the same kind as A exists such that

$$nX = A.$$

This may also be written in either of the forms

$$X = \frac{1}{n}A$$

$$\text{or } X = \frac{A}{n}.$$

It can be illustrated by dividing a segment of a straight line into any number of equal parts.

It should be mentioned that if A represent an arc of a circle, although it is not in general possible by the aid of the ruler and compasses to divide A into n equal parts, yet it is assumed that an arc

$X = \frac{A}{n}$ does exist.

- (5) If A be greater than B , a multiple of B exists which is greater than A .

The fifth characteristic is known as the Axiom of Archimedes. It is not a consequence of the preceding four characteristics.

The following deduction from the above is specially useful in the Theory of Proportion :

If A and B are two magnitudes of the same kind, and any multiple whatever of A , say rA , is chosen, and any multiple whatever of B , say sB , is chosen, then one and only one of the alternatives

$$rA > sB, rA = sB, rA < sB$$

always exists, and it is assumed to be possible to determine which one of these alternatives exists.

CHAPTER II

ARTICLES 4-12

Propositions Relating to Magnitudes and their Multiples.

ARTICLE 4

(IN what follows, magnitudes are denoted by capital letters and positive integers by small letters.)

Prop. I. $n(A+B+C+\dots) = nA+nB+nC+\dots$

Prop. II. $(a+b+c+\dots)N = aN+bN+cN+\dots$

Prop. III. $(r(s))A = r(sA) = s(rA) = (s(r))A$.

Prop. IV. If $A > B$, then $r(A-B) = rA - rB$.

Prop. V. If $a > b$, then $(a-b)R = aR - bR$.

Prop. VI. If $A > B$, then $rA > rB$.

If $A = B$, then $rA = rB$.

If $A < B$, then $rA < rB$.

Conversely. If $rA > rB$, then $A > B$.

If $rA = rB$, then $A = B$.

If $rA < rB$, then $A < B$.

Prop. VII. If $a > b$, then $aR > bR$.

If $a = b$, then $aR = bR$.

If $a < b$, then $aR < bR$.

Conversely. If $aR > bR$, then $a > b$.

If $aR = bR$, then $a = b$.

If $aR < bR$, then $a < b$.

Prop. VIII. If X, Y, Z are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $X > Y + Z$, then an integer t exists such that $X > tZ > Y$.

Corollary. If A, B, C are magnitudes of the same kind, and $A > B$, then integers n, t exist such that $nA > tC > nB$.

ARTICLE 5

Prop. I. (Euc. V. 1.)

$n(A+B+C+\dots) = nA+nB+nC+\dots$

The simplest case of this is

$$n(A+B) = nA + nB.$$

For a rigid deduction of this from the Associative and Commutative Laws I refer to my edition of *Euclid V and VI*, 2nd edition, pp. 125-6. It is tedious, and the beginner should not be stopped at this stage with it. It is sufficient to say that the effect of the Associative and Commutative Laws is this, that when any number of magnitudes are to be added together, they may be arranged in any order and grouped in any way, the magnitudes in each group may be first added together, and then finally the sum of the groups can be found, and that the result so obtained will always be the same.

Thus $n(A+B)$ is the sum of n groups, each of which is $A+B$.

The magnitude A occurs n times; and therefore taking these together, their sum is nA .

The magnitude B occurs n times; and taking these together, their sum is nB .

The sum of the two groups is $nA+nB$.

$$\therefore n(A+B) = nA + nB.$$

If on both sides B be replaced by C , and then A by $A+B$, it follows that

$$n((A+B)+C) = n(A+B) + nC.$$

$$\therefore n(A+B+C) = nA + nB + nC.$$

Proceeding in this way, it follows that

$$n(A+B+C+\dots) = nA + nB + nC + \dots$$

ARTICLE 6

Prop. II. (Euc. V. 2.)

$$(a+b+c+\dots)N = aN + bN + cN + \dots$$

The simplest case of this is

$$(a+b)N = aN + bN.$$

Now $(a+b)N$ means that N is taken $a+b$ times.

Group the first a N 's together. Their sum is aN .

Group the remaining b N 's together. Their sum is bN .

$$\therefore (a+b)N = aN + bN.$$

If on both sides b be replaced by c , and then a by $(a+b)$ it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} ((a+b)+c)N &= (a+b)N + cN \\ \therefore (a+b+c)N &= aN + bN + cN. \end{aligned}$$

Proceeding in this way it follows that

$$(a+b+c+\dots)N = aN + bN + cN + \dots$$

For a rigid deduction of the proposition from the Associative and Commutative Laws see my *Euclid V. and VI.*, 2nd edition, p. 127.

ARTICLE 7

Prop. III. $(r(s))A = r(sA) = s(rA) = (s(r))A.$

In Prop. I., suppose that each of the magnitudes B, C, \dots is equal to A , and that there are, including A , altogether s magnitudes.

Then $n(A+B+C+\dots)$ is $n(sA)$,
and $nA+nB+nC+\dots$ is $s(nA)$.
 $\therefore n(sA) = s(nA).$

Or replacing n by r , $r(sA) = s(rA) \dots \dots \dots$ (I).

Next in Prop. II. suppose that each of the integers a, b, c, \dots is equal to s ; and that there are r such integers.

Then $(a+b+c+\dots)N$ becomes $(r(s))N$,
and $aN+bN+cN+\dots$ becomes $r(sN)$.
 $\therefore (r(s))N = r(sN),$

or replacing N by A , $(r(s))A = r(sA) \dots \dots \dots$ (II).

Interchanging s and r , $(s(r))A = s(rA) \dots \dots \dots$ (III).

Then from (I), (II), (III) it follows that

$$(r(s))A = r(sA) = s(rA) = (s(r))A.$$

Corollary: $s[\{n(r)\}A] = r[\{n(s)\}A]$

To prove this, observe that

$$\begin{aligned} \{n(r)\}A &= n(rA) = r(nA) \\ \therefore s[\{n(r)\}A] &= s[r(nA)] \\ &= r[s(nA)] \\ &= r[\{n(s)\}A] \end{aligned}$$

This Corollary is not required until Propositions XVIII. and XX. are reached (see Arts. 51, 53).

The effect of Prop. III. and the Corollary amount to this, that the factors of a product when they are all positive integers may be taken in any order and grouped in any way.

Beginners will find the Corollary a little difficult, and too much time ought not to be spent on it. It is enough to call attention to the effect of the Proposition and Corollary as just stated.

ARTICLE 8

Prop. IV. If $A > B$, then $r(A - B) = rA - rB$. (Euc. V. 5.)

Since $A > B$, then by Art. 3 (3) a magnitude C exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} A &= B + C, \\ \therefore rA &= rB + rC, \\ \therefore rC &= rA - rB, \\ \text{but } C &= A - B, \\ \therefore r(A - B) &= rA - rB. \end{aligned}$$

ARTICLE 9

Prop. V. If $a > b$, then $(a - b)R = aR - bR$. (Euc. V. 6.)

Since a, b are integers, and $a > b$, an integer c exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} a &= b + c, \\ \therefore aR &= (b + c)R = bR + cR \text{ (Prop. II.)} \\ \therefore cR &= aR - bR, \\ \text{but since } a &= b + c, \\ \therefore c &= a - b, \\ \therefore (a - b)R &= aR - bR. \end{aligned}$$

ARTICLE 10

Prop. VI. If $A > B$, then $rA > rB$,
 If $A = B$, then $rA = rB$,
 If $A < B$, then $rA < rB$.

Conversely, If $rA > rB$, then $A > B$,
 If $rA = rB$, then $A = B$,
 If $rA < rB$, then $A < B$.

If $A > B$, then, as in Prop. IV.,

$$rA = rB + rC, \text{ where } A = B + C,$$

$$\therefore rA > rB.$$

If $A = B$, then rA means ($A + A + \dots$ to r terms)

$$= (B + B + \dots \text{ to } r \text{ terms})$$

$$= rB,$$

$$\therefore rA = rB.$$

If $A < B$, then $B > A$,

and \therefore by the first case

$$rB > rA,$$

$$\therefore rA < rB.$$

The Converse Proposition follows as a logical consequence of the preceding.

Take for example the first part.

$$\text{If } rA > rB,$$

then since A and B are supposed to be of *the same kind*, one of the three alternatives must hold :

$$A > B, \text{ or } A = B, \text{ or } A < B.$$

If $A = B$, then $rA = rB$, by what has been shown already, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $rA > rB$.

Hence A is not equal to B .

If $A < B$, then $rA < rB$, by what has been shown already, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $rA > rB$.

Hence A is not less than B .

Consequently A is greater than B .

The remaining cases can be proved in like manner.

ARTICLE 11

Prop. VII. If $a > b$, then $aR > bR$,

If $a = b$, then $aR = bR$,

If $a < b$, then $aR < bR$.

Conversely, If $aR > bR$, then $a > b$,

If $aR = bR$, then $a = b$,

If $aR < bR$, then $a < b$.

If $a > b$, then, as in Prop. V.,

$$aR = bR + cR, \text{ where } a = b + c,$$

$$\therefore aR > bR.$$

If $a = b$, then aR means $(R + R + \dots$ to a terms)
 $= (R + R + \dots$ to b terms)
 $= bR$,
 $\therefore aR = bR$.

If $a < b$, then $b > a$,
 \therefore by the first case
 $bR > aR$,
 $\therefore aR < bR$.

The Converse part of the Proposition follows as a logical consequence from the preceding, as in Prop. VI.

ARTICLE 12

Prop. VIII. If X, Y, Z are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $X > Y + Z$, then an integer t exists such that

$$X > tZ > Y.$$

Corollary. If A, B, C are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $A > B$, then integers n, t exist such that

$$nA > tC > nB.$$

Since $X > Y + Z$,
 $\therefore X > Z$.

It may be that X is also greater than $2Z$ or $3Z$ or $4Z$, and so on.

Suppose that tZ is the greatest multiple of Z which is less than X .

Then $(t+1)Z$ must be either greater than X or equal to X .

If $(t+1)Z > X$, then since $X > Y + Z$, $\therefore (t+1)Z > Y + Z$, $\therefore tZ > Y$.	If $(t+1)Z = X$, then since $X > Y + Z$, $\therefore (t+1)Z > Y + Z$, $\therefore tZ > Y$.
---	---

Hence in both cases $tZ > Y$.

But also $tZ < X$.

Consequently $X > tZ > Y$.

This proposition is not an easy one for beginners to grasp. It may be illustrated graphically thus :

Suppose that X, Y, Z are lengths.

On one side of a straight line mark off a length $OB = Y$, and $BC = Z$.

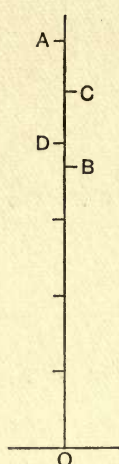


FIG. 1.

On the other side mark off $OA = X$.

Then since $X > Y + Z$,
 $\therefore OA > OB + BC$,
 $\therefore OA > OC$.

If now, starting from O , successive lengths equal to BC be marked off, one of the markings must fall between B and A , because $BA > Z$. Let this marking be D . Let OD be equal to $t(BC)$, i.e. tZ .

Then since $OA > OD > OB$,
 $\therefore X > tZ > Y$.

To prove the Corollary, observe that since $A > B$, $\therefore A - B$ is a magnitude of the same kind as A and B , and therefore of the same kind as C .

Hence, by Archimedes' Axiom an integer n exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} n(A - B) &> C, \\ \therefore nA - nB &> C, \\ \therefore nA &> nB + C. \end{aligned}$$

Putting, in Prop. VIII.,

$$X = nA, \quad Y = nB, \quad Z = C,$$

it follows that an integer t exists such that

$$nA > tC > nB.$$

CHAPTER III

ARTICLES 13-18

The Relations between Multiples of the same Magnitude. Commensurable Magnitudes.

ARTICLE 13

IF two magnitudes are multiples of the same magnitude, they may be said to be measured by that magnitude. Thus lengths of 7 feet and 13 feet can be exactly measured by an *undivided* foot rule.

These two lengths are said to have a common measure, viz. 1 foot, and are called commensurable.

If a length of 2 feet and a length of 1 foot be taken, the first is said to be *twice* as great as the second, whilst the second is said to be *half* as great as the first.

Thus if these two lengths be considered, not separately, but in relation to one another, they determine two numbers, viz. 2 and $\frac{1}{2}$.

Note that in each case from the two lengths *and the order in which they are taken*, a number which is not a length has been determined, and that the unit in terms of which the lengths are measured does not appear in the result.

In this case it is said that

The ratio of 2 feet to 1 foot is 2.

„ „ „ 1 foot to 2 feet is $\frac{1}{2}$.

Similarly :

The ratio of 3 inches to 1 inch is 3.

„ „ „ 3 inches to 2 inches is $\frac{3}{2}$.

„ „ „ 2 inches to 3 inches is $\frac{2}{3}$.

„ „ „ 3 yards to 2 yards is $\frac{3}{2}$.

„ „ „ 2 yards to 3 yards is $\frac{2}{3}$.

The ratio of 3 yards to 2 feet
 =the ratio of 9 feet to 2 feet= $\frac{9}{2}$.

The ratio of 2 yards to 3 feet
 =the ratio of 6 feet to 3 feet= $\frac{6}{3}=2$.

The ratio of 5 miles to 7 miles= $\frac{5}{7}$.

The ratio of 5 miles to 7 furlongs
 =the ratio of 40 furlongs to 7 furlongs= $\frac{40}{7}$.

The ratio of 7 minutes to 105 seconds
 =the ratio of 420 seconds to 105 seconds= $\frac{420}{105}=4$.

The ratio of 13 hours to 2 days
 =the ratio of 13 hours to 24 hours= $\frac{13}{24}$.

In all these cases the unit in terms of which the magnitudes are measured does not appear in the result. [When there are two units, those units are magnitudes of the same kind, e.g. an hour and a day, and the two magnitudes are expressible in terms of the same unit.]

Similarly it may be said that

The ratio of $3A$ to $2A$ = $\frac{3}{2}$.

„ „ „ $2A$ to $3A$ = $\frac{2}{3}$.

„ „ „ rA to A = $\frac{r}{1}=r$.

„ „ „ nA to rA = $\frac{n}{r}$.

„ „ „ rA to nA = $\frac{r}{n}$.

Thus if two multiples of the same magnitude are given, *and the order in which they are taken is fixed*, then these particulars determine a number.

This number is the quotient of one positive whole number by another. It is usually called a vulgar fraction. All positive and negative whole numbers or fractions, which are quotients of one whole number by another, are called rational numbers, but we shall only have to deal with those which are positive in this book.

The usual notation for the ratio of X to Y is

$$X : Y,$$

and consequently the ratio of Y to X is denoted by

$$Y : X.$$

It is advisable to write these in brackets, thus

$$(X : Y) \text{ and } (Y : X),$$

because beginners who have not grasped the idea that the whole symbol represents a single number not infrequently imagine that $X : Y$ still represents the two distinct things X and Y .

GEOMETRICAL ILLUSTRATIONS

ARTICLE 14

(i.) There are two parallelograms on bases 3 inches and 2 inches respectively.

The height of each parallelogram is 1 inch.

Prove that the ratio of the areas of the parallelograms is equal to the ratio of the lengths of the bases.

Let the parallelograms be $ABCD$ and $EFGH$.

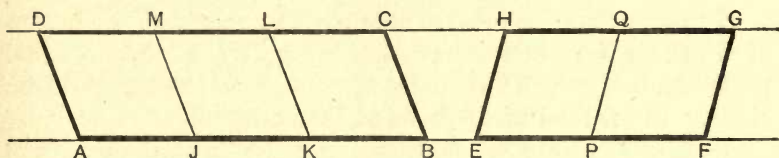


FIG. 2.

Since they have the same height they may be placed between the same parallels as in the figure.

Let the base AB represent 3 inches, and the base EF 2 inches.

Then $(AB : EF) = \frac{3}{2}$.

On AB mark off $AJ = JK = KB$ to represent 1 inch, and on EF mark off $EP = PF$ to represent 1 inch.

Draw JM, KL parallel to AD , and PQ parallel to EH .

Then the five parallelograms

$$AJMD, JKLM, KBCL, EPQH, PFGQ$$

are equal in area, for they stand on equal bases and are between the same parallels.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Consequently } ABCD &= 3(AJMD), \\ EFGH &= 2(AJMD), \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore (ABCD : EFGH) = \frac{3}{2},$$

$$\text{but } (AB : EF) = \frac{3}{2},$$

$$\therefore (ABCD : EFGH) = (AB : EF).$$

ARTICLE 15

(ii.) There are two triangles on bases 4 inches and 3 inches respectively.

The height of each triangle is 2 inches.

It can be shown as in the last example that the ratio of the lengths of the bases of the triangles is $\frac{4}{3}$, and also that the ratio of the areas of the triangles is $\frac{4}{3}$.

Hence the ratio of the areas of the triangles is equal to the ratio of the lengths of their bases.

ARTICLE 16

(iii.) In two equal circles there are arcs whose lengths are $5A$ and $7A$ respectively, A representing the length of a certain arc.

Suppose that the arc A subtends an angle α at the centre of either circle; then the arc $5A$, being divisible into 5 equal parts, each of which subtends an angle α at the centre of its circle, will subtend an angle 5α at that centre.

Similarly the arc $7A$ subtends an angle 7α at the centre of its circle.

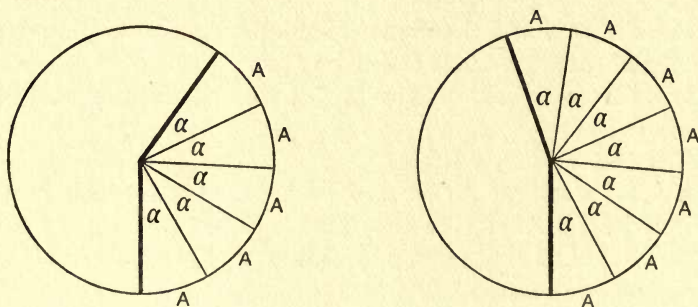


FIG. 3.

Now the ratio of the arcs $= (5A : 7A) = \frac{5}{7}$.

The ratio of the angles subtended by the arcs

$$= (5\alpha : 7\alpha) = \frac{5}{7}.$$

Hence the ratio of the arcs is equal to the ratio of the angles they subtend at the centre.

It will be noticed that in each of these examples the particular numbers which occur, viz. 3 and 2 in the first, 4 and

3 in the second, 5 and 7 in the third, do not appear in the final result, which is a general proposition having no apparent connection with the numbers that occur. And in fact each of these propositions can be generalised.

It will be sufficient to take the first.

ARTICLE 17 .

Two parallelograms, situated between the same parallels, have commensurable bases, to prove that the ratio of the area of the first parallelogram to the area of the second parallelogram is equal to the ratio of the length of the base of the first parallelogram to the length of the base of the second parallelogram.

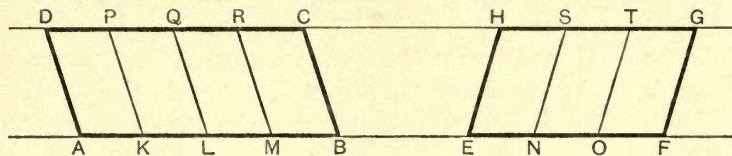


FIG. 4.

Let the parallelograms $ABCD$, $EFGH$ have their bases AB , EF commensurable.

Let AK be a common measure of AB , EF .

Suppose that $AB=r(AK)$,
 $EF=s(AK)$.

Let AB , EF be divided as in the figure into parts each equal to AK , and through the points of division of AB let straight lines be drawn parallel to AD ; and through the points of division of EF let straight lines be drawn parallel to EH , so that each parallelogram is divided up into equal parallelograms.

Since the bases of all these parallelograms are equal, and they are situated between the same parallels, they are equal in area.

Since AB contains r lengths each equal to AK , therefore the parallelogram $ABCD$ contains r parallelograms each equal to $AKPD$.

$$\therefore ABCD=r(AKPD).$$

$$\text{Also } EF=s(EN)=s(AK).$$

Thus EF contains s lengths each equal to AK ,

\therefore the parallelogram $EFGH$ contains s parallelograms each equal to $AKPD$,

$$\therefore EFGH = s(AKPD).$$

$$\text{Since } AB = r(AK),$$

$$\text{and } EF = s(AK);$$

$$\therefore (AB : EF) = \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\text{Since } ABCD = r(AKPD),$$

$$\text{and } EFGH = s(AKPD);$$

$$\therefore (ABCD : EFGH) = \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\therefore (ABCD : EFGH) = (AB : EF).$$

Another step may now be taken.

ARTICLE 18

Suppose that there are three magnitudes A, B, C which are all multiples of the same magnitude G .

Let $A = aG, B = bG, C = cG$, where a, b, c are some positive integers.

Then the ratio of A to C ,

i.e. of aG to cG ,

is by definition $\frac{a}{c}$.

Similarly the ratio of B to C is $\frac{b}{c}$.

Now if $A > B$,
then $aG > bG$,

$$\therefore a > b,$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{c} > \frac{b}{c},$$

$$\therefore (A : C) > (B : C).$$

If $A = B$,
then $aG = bG$,

$$\therefore a = b,$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{c} = \frac{b}{c},$$

$$\therefore (A : C) = (B : C).$$

If $A < B$,
then $aG < bG$,

$$\therefore a < b \text{ (Prop. VII).}$$

$$\therefore \frac{a}{c} < \frac{b}{c}.$$

$$\therefore (A : C) < (B : C).$$

Hence if A, B, C are multiples of the same magnitude,

Then, if $A > B$,

$$(A : C) > (B : C).$$

If $A = B$,

$$\text{then } (A : C) = (B : C).$$

If $A < B$,

$$\text{then } (A : C) < (B : C).$$

These results have been obtained on the hypothesis that A, B, C are multiples of the same magnitude.

It will be noticed that the fact that A, B, C are multiples of the same magnitude does not appear *plainly* in the statement of the results. It appears *indirectly* because only in this case has the meaning of the symbols $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$ been defined.

Let it be supposed that A, B, C represent any lengths, then, if $A=B$, the magnitude of A compared with that of C is the same as that of B compared with that of C . This idea is fundamental.

It will be noticed that it does not involve the condition that A, B, C have a common measure. The result is expressed by saying that if $A=B$, then the ratio of A to C is equal to that of B to C , or more shortly $(A : C) = (B : C)$, and it will be proved later that the statement has a meaning when A, B, C have no common measure.

If, next, A be greater than B the magnitude of A compared with that of C is greater than that of B compared with that of C . This idea, too, is fundamental. It will be noticed that it does not involve the condition that A, B, C have a common measure. The result is expressed by saying that if A be greater than B , then the ratio of A to C is greater than that of B to C , or more shortly $(A : C) > (B : C)$, and it will be proved later that the statement has a meaning when A, B, C have no common measure.

I think it must be evident to any one who compares these two fundamental ideas with the Fifth and Seventh Definitions of Euclid's Fifth Book that they are of a far simpler nature than those definitions, and that they must have formed the starting-point from which the book was built up.

CHAPTER IV

ARTICLES 19-21

Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND which are NOT Multiples of the same Magnitude. Incommensurable Magnitudes.

ARTICLE 19

It will now be shown that if two magnitudes of the same kind be chosen at random they may not have a common measure.

To prove this all that is necessary is to show that it is possible to choose some two magnitudes of the same kind, out of the infinite number that exist, which have no common measure.

ARTICLE 20

Take the diagonal and side of a square.

If possible let them have a common measure, viz. a length L . Let the side of the square be p times L , and let the diagonal of the square be q times L , where p, q are some positive whole numbers.

Now the square on the diagonal has twice the area of the square on the side.

$$\therefore q^2 = 2p^2.$$

If p, q have a common factor, let their greatest common factor be g .

$$\text{Let } \frac{q}{g} = r, \frac{p}{g} = s.$$

Then r, s have no common factor and $r^2 = 2s^2$.

As r, s have no common factor they cannot both be even, and therefore the following cases only need be considered :

- (i.) r odd, s odd.
- (ii.) r odd, s even.
- (iii.) r even, s odd.

In the first and second cases r^2 is odd, and cannot there-

fore be equal to $2s^2$, which is even. Hence the first and second alternatives cannot hold.

In the third case put $r=2m$.

This gives $2m^2=s^2$.

But $2m^2$ is even, and s^2 is odd.

Hence the third alternative cannot hold.

Hence the equation $r^2=2s^2$ cannot hold.

Consequently the side and diagonal of a square have no common measure.

It has thus been proved that magnitudes of the same kind exist which have no common measure.

ARTICLE 21

Having reached this result the question arises :

If two magnitudes have no common measure, can one of them have a ratio to the other, and if so how is it to be measured ?

Let us return to the study of the case of the diagonal and side of a square and see where it leads us.

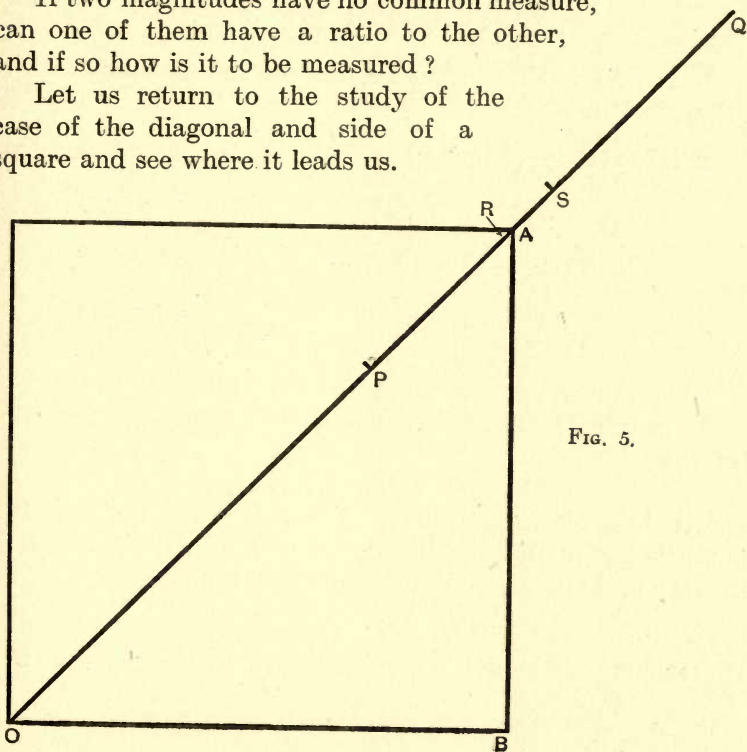


FIG. 5.

Suppose that OA is the diagonal and OB the side of the square.

On OA measure off $OP=OB$, and $OQ=2OB$.

It will be found that

$$OP < OA < OQ.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } (OP : OB) &= (OB : OB) = 1, \\ (OQ : OB) &= (2OB : OB) = 2. \end{aligned}$$

Next divide OB into tenths, and set off tenths of OB along the diagonal OA .

If $OR = 14\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right)$ and $OS = 15\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right)$ it will be found that

$$OR < OA < OS.$$

$$\text{Now } (OR : OB) = \left(14\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right) : 10\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right)\right) = \frac{14}{10},$$

$$(OS : OB) = \left(15\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right) : 10\left(\frac{OB}{10}\right)\right) = \frac{15}{10}.$$

Next divide OB into hundredths and set off hundredths of OB along OA .

If $OT = 141\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right)$ and $OU = 142\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right)$, it will be found that

$$OT < OA < OU.$$

$$\text{Now } (OT : OB) = \left(141\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right) : 100\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right)\right) = \frac{141}{100},$$

$$(OU : OB) = \left(142\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right) : 100\left(\frac{OB}{100}\right)\right) = \frac{142}{100}.$$

This process may be continued indefinitely.

It is possible to construct a series of steadily increasing lengths

$$OP, OR, OT, \dots$$

approaching closer and closer in length to the diagonal OA , but never actually reaching it, each of them having a ratio to OB ; and also a series of steadily decreasing lengths

$$OQ, OS, OU, \dots *$$

approaching closer and closer in length to the diagonal OA ,

* The scale on which the figure is drawn is too small for the insertion of the points T, U .

but never actually reaching it, and each of them having a ratio to OB .

This process never comes to an end, because however much OB may be subdivided, whether into tenths, hundredths, etc., or into *any* number of equal parts, no part of OB can ever be found of which OA is a multiple, as has just been proved in Art. 20.

It would be incorrect to conclude from these facts that OA has not a ratio to OB .

All that they justify is that if OA has a ratio to OB it is not a rational number. If, then, OA has a ratio to OB , and this ratio is a number of some kind, then there must be numbers which are not rational.

CHAPTER V

ARTICLES 22-28

Extension of the Idea of Number.

ARTICLE 22

WE are thus led to enquire whether it is possible to widen the idea of number so as to include numbers which are not rational. Such numbers will be shown to exist, and when they have been defined it will be possible to construct a theory of ratio which is applicable when A and B are two magnitudes of the same kind which have no common measure, and then it will appear that the ratio of A to B is a number of this kind. Such numbers are called irrational numbers.

The subject will be made clearer by going back to some earlier stages in the extension of the idea of number.

Commencing with the series of positive whole numbers, it is seen that if any two positive whole numbers are *added* together, their sum is also a positive whole number, and no new kind of number is required to express the result of the operation of *addition*.

If, however, any two positive numbers are taken at random, and one is *subtracted* from the other, then the result is not always a positive whole number. In order that it may be possible to express the result of the *subtraction* as a number in all cases, it is necessary to widen the idea of number by introducing the idea of the negative whole number.

If, next, any two positive whole numbers be taken and *multiplied* together the result is always a positive whole number, and no new kind of number is required to express the result of the *multiplication*.

If, however, any two positive numbers be taken and one of them *divided* by the other, the result of the *division* cannot

always be expressed by a positive whole number. It cannot in general be expressed as a number at all until the idea of number is widened by introducing the idea of the vulgar fraction.

To express the result of subtracting any positive vulgar fraction from any other it is necessary to introduce the idea of the negative vulgar fraction.

In all these cases the idea of number has been widened by endeavouring to express as numbers the results of certain operations.

Thus, starting from the idea of the positive whole number, the idea of number has gradually been widened so as to include positive vulgar fractions, negative whole numbers and negative vulgar fractions.

Positive whole numbers and positive vulgar fractions may be regarded as magnitudes *of the same kind* in the technical sense explained in Article 3.

Similarly negative whole numbers and negative vulgar fractions may be regarded as magnitudes *of the same kind*.

All these numbers together are said to form

THE SYSTEM OF RATIONAL NUMBERS.

ARTICLE 23

Every number in this system has a definite place WITH REGARD TO *the other numbers*, and provided that all fractions are supposed to be reduced to their lowest terms, each place is occupied by one and only one number.

If $\frac{a}{b}$ and $\frac{c}{d}$ be any two positive numbers in the system, then the rule for determining their order is as follows :

$$\text{Since } \frac{a}{b} = \frac{ad}{bd},$$

$$\text{and since } \frac{c}{d} = \frac{bc}{bd},$$

$\frac{a}{b}$ will be said to precede or be less than $\frac{c}{d}$ if $ad < bc$;

$\frac{a}{b}$ will be said to follow or be greater than $\frac{c}{d}$ if $ad > bc$.

The case in which $ad = bc$ can only occur when either

$\frac{a}{b}$ or $\frac{c}{d}$ or both of them have not been reduced to their lowest terms. In this case they are said to be equal.

Suppose that when reduced to their lowest terms the result is $\frac{e}{f}$. Then both are replaced by the single number $\frac{e}{f}$.*

ARTICLE 24†

Let us now put to ourselves the question :

Does anything exist, which is not a RATIONAL number, which is nevertheless entitled to be ranked as a number ?

If so we may agree that it must be in the technical sense of the words, a magnitude of the same kind as the rational numbers.

Now the first of the characteristics of magnitudes of the same kind, enumerated in Chapter I (Article 3 (1)) is this :

“Any two magnitudes of the same kind may be regarded as equal or unequal.

“In the latter case one of them is said to be the smaller and the other the larger of the two.”

Suppose that $\frac{r}{s}$ is any rational number whatever, and that \bar{i} is a magnitude of the same kind in the technical sense as the rational numbers, but yet is not a rational number.

Thus \bar{i} and $\frac{r}{s}$ are in the technical sense magnitudes of the same kind.

Hence either \bar{i} is equal to $\frac{r}{s}$, or \bar{i} is not equal to $\frac{r}{s}$.

Now \bar{i} cannot be equal to $\frac{r}{s}$, for then \bar{i} would be a rational number contrary to the hypothesis.

Hence \bar{i} is not equal to $\frac{r}{s}$,

and \therefore either $\bar{i} > \frac{r}{s}$ or $\bar{i} < \frac{r}{s}$.

* The negative numbers precede the positive numbers, and are arranged according to the following rule :

If $\frac{a}{b}$ precede $\frac{c}{d}$,

then $-\frac{c}{d}$ precedes $-\frac{a}{b}$.

These may be written $\frac{a}{b} < \frac{c}{d}$,

and $-\frac{c}{d} < -\frac{a}{b}$.

For the purposes of this book the negative numbers will not be required.

† For a more complete treatment of this subject see Chapter XI., Arts.

In order that this result may be of any use, it is necessary to have the means of deciding whether \bar{i} is greater or less than any rational number whatever.

ARTICLE 25

As a particular case take the number known as the square root of 2. If it be defined as that number whose square is 2, then it is plainly not a rational number $\frac{r}{s}$, for it has been shown that no integers r and s exist such that $r^2=2s^2$, and therefore there is no rational number $\frac{r}{s}$ such that

$$\left(\frac{r}{s}\right)^2=2.$$

Let us now consider the process for finding approximately the square root of 2. In essence it is a process for obtaining rapidly the results described below.

Commencing with the natural numbers 1, 2, . . . we find that 2 lies between 1^2 and 2^2 ; we say, therefore, that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1 and 2. Take next the numbers between 1 and 2 which have a figure in the first place of decimals, and include 1 and 2 as well.

These are 1, 1.1, 1.2, 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, 1.6, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 2. Squaring each of these it will be found that 2 lies between $(1.4)^2$ and $(1.5)^2$.

We say therefore that $\sqrt{2}$ lies between 1.4 and 1.5.

Taking next between 1.4 and 1.5 inclusive the numbers :

1.4, 1.41, 1.42, 1.43, 1.44, 1.45, 1.46, 1.47, 1.48, 1.49, 1.5
it will be found that

$$2 \text{ lies between } (1.41)^2 \text{ and } (1.42)^2.$$

We say, therefore, that

$$\sqrt{2} \text{ lies between } 1.41 \text{ and } 1.42.$$

This is a process that can be continued indefinitely. It gives us an infinite series of numbers,

$$1, 1.4, 1.41, 1.414, 1.4142, \dots$$

in ascending order of magnitude whose squares are all less than 2; and we say that $\sqrt{2}$ is greater than each member of this series. It gives us also an infinite series of numbers,

$$2, 1.5, 1.42, 1.415, 1.4143, \dots$$

in descending order of magnitude whose squares are all greater than 2; and we say that $\sqrt{2}$ is less than each member of this series.

Now suppose $\frac{r}{s}$ is any rational number; then it is known that either

$$r^2 < 2s^2 \text{ or else } r^2 > 2s^2,$$

$$\text{and } \therefore \text{ either } \left(\frac{r}{s}\right)^2 < 2 \text{ or else } \left(\frac{r}{s}\right)^2 > 2.$$

Then, as in the preceding cases, we shall say if $\left(\frac{r}{s}\right)^2 < 2$, then $\left(\frac{r}{s}\right)$ is less than the square root of 2; but if $\left(\frac{r}{s}\right)^2 > 2$, then $\frac{r}{s}$ is greater than the square root of 2.

On this understanding *the square root of 2 has a definite place WITH REGARD TO the system of rational numbers.* It is not itself a rational number, but whenever any rational number is assigned, it is possible to say whether it is greater or less than the square root of 2. The square root of 2 fills the gap between those rational numbers whose squares are greater than 2 and those whose squares are less than 2. We proceed to generalise the idea we have reached.

ARTICLE 26

An irrational number \bar{i} will be regarded as known, whenever any rule has been given which will make it possible to distinguish those rational numbers which are greater than \bar{i} from those which are less than \bar{i} , because this knowledge makes it possible to determine all the properties of \bar{i} . The effect of the adoption of such a rule is that

Any irrational number has a definite place with regard to the system of rational numbers. It fills the gap between those rational numbers which are greater than it and those rational numbers which are less than it.

Mode of Distinguishing between Unequal Irrational Numbers.

ARTICLE 27

Suppose next that \bar{i} and \bar{j} are two irrational numbers.

If they are not equal to one another, they occupy different

places with regard to the system of rational numbers, and therefore some rational number $\frac{r}{s}$ must fall between them.

Hence either $\bar{i} < \frac{r}{s} < \bar{j}$,

and then \bar{i} is said to be less than \bar{j} ;

or else $\bar{i} > \frac{r}{s} > \bar{j}$,

and then \bar{i} is said to be greater than \bar{j} .

Conditions for Equality of Irrational Numbers.

ARTICLE 28

If, however, \bar{i} and \bar{j} are the same irrational number, then they have the same place with regard to the system of rational numbers, hence no rational number can lie between them.

If $\therefore \bar{i} = \bar{j}$,

and if $\frac{r}{s}$ represent any rational number whatever, then

if $\bar{i} > \frac{r}{s}$, it is necessary that $\bar{j} > \frac{r}{s}$;

but if $\bar{i} < \frac{r}{s}$, it is necessary that $\bar{j} < \frac{r}{s}$.

Conversely, if $\frac{r}{s}$ represent *any* rational number *whatever*, and if it be known

that whenever $\bar{i} > \frac{r}{s}$, then $\bar{j} > \frac{r}{s}$;

and whenever $\bar{i} < \frac{r}{s}$, then $\bar{j} < \frac{r}{s}$,

then will $\bar{i} = \bar{j}$.

For since $\frac{r}{s}$ represents *any* rational *number* whatever, the data amount to the statement that no rational number whatever can lie between \bar{i} and \bar{j} , and $\therefore \bar{i} = \bar{j}$.

CHAPTER VI

ARTICLES 29-41

ON THE RATIOS OF MAGNITUDES WHICH HAVE NO COMMON MEASURE.

Principles on which the Theory of the Ratio of Magnitudes which have no Common Measure is based.

ARTICLE 29

HAVING now explained how irrational numbers are defined the next step is to lay down certain principles upon which a theory of the ratio of magnitudes which have no common measure can be constructed.

It was seen in the third chapter that when A, B, C were magnitudes of the same kind which had a common measure, then

$$\begin{array}{l|l} (1) & \text{if } A > B, \\ & \text{then } (A : C) > (B : C); \\ (2) & \text{if } A = B, \\ & \text{then } (A : C) = (B : C); \\ (3)^* & \text{if } A < B, \\ & \text{then } (A : C) < (B : C). \end{array}$$

The new theory of ratio is constructed so as to satisfy the above conditions (1), (2), and (3) in all cases, whether A, B, C have or have not a common measure.

Since these conditions are exactly those which held good when A, B, C have a common measure, there will be no contradiction between this and what precedes.

This will have prepared the way for

ARTICLE 30

Prop. IX. Let it be assumed to be true that, when A, B, C

* It is to be observed that condition (3) is not distinct from (1).

are magnitudes of the same kind, whether they are multiples of the same magnitude or not,*

$$\begin{array}{l|l} (1) & \text{if } A > B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) > (B : C); & \\ \hline (2) & \text{if } A = B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) = (B : C); & \\ \hline (3) & \text{if } A < B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) < (B : C); & \end{array}$$

then it will be proved that it follows as a logical consequence that

$$\begin{array}{l|l} (4) & \text{if } (A : C) > (B : C), \\ \text{then } A > B; & \\ \hline (5) & \text{if } (A : C) = (B : C), \\ \text{then } A = B; & \\ \hline (6) & \text{if } (A : C) < (B : C), \\ \text{then } A < B. & \end{array}$$

It will be sufficient to take case (4).

In this case $(A : C) > (B : C)$.

Now since A and B are magnitudes of the same kind,

$$\therefore A > B \text{ or } A = B \text{ or } A < B.$$

Now if $A = B$, then, by (2), $(A : C) = (B : C)$, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $(A : C) > (B : C)$.

Hence A is not equal to B .

And if $A < B$, then, by (3), $(A : C) < (B : C)$, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $(A : C) > (B : C)$.

Hence A is not less than B , and it was shown that A was not equal to B .

$\therefore A$ must be greater than B .

The other two cases can be proved in like manner.

We shall refer to the assumptions

$$\begin{array}{l|l} (1) & \text{if } A > B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) > (B : C); & \\ \hline (2) & \text{if } A = B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) = (B : C); & \\ \hline (3) & \text{if } A < B, \\ \text{then } (A : C) < (B : C), & \end{array}$$

in what follows as the fundamental assumptions or principles on which the theory of ratio is constructed.

* It will be proved later on that in this case the symbols $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$ have a meaning.

Since the third is included in the first, they are equivalent to only two assumptions. It will be found that they make it possible to construct a theory of the ratio of magnitudes of the same kind, whether they have or have not a common measure, which is consistent with and includes the former theory.

We shall require the following Proposition :

ARTICLE 31

PROP. X.

- (i.) If $rA > sB$, then is $(A : B) > \frac{s}{r}$;
- (ii.) If $rA = sB$, then is $(A : B) = \frac{s}{r}$;
- (iii.) If $rA < sB$, then is $(A : B) < \frac{s}{r}$.

Conversely

- (iv.) If $(A : B) > \frac{s}{r}$, then is $rA > sB$;
- (v.) If $(A : B) = \frac{s}{r}$, then is $rA = sB$;
- (vi.) If $(A : B) < \frac{s}{r}$, then is $rA < sB$.

To prove (i.) :

By Art. 3 (4)

a magnitude X exists such that

$$B = rX,$$

$$\therefore \text{if } rA > sB,$$

$$\text{then } rA > s(rX),$$

$$\therefore rA > r(sX) \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore A > sX \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. VI.}$$

\therefore by the fundamental assumption (Art. 29)

$$(A : B) > (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) > (sX : rX),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) > \frac{s}{r}.$$

To prove (ii.) :

In this case $rA = sB$,

but $B = rX$,

$$\therefore rA = s(rX),$$

$$\therefore rA = r(sX) \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore A = sX \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. VI.}$$

∴ by the fundamental assumption (Art. 29)

$$(A : B) = (sX : rX) \\ = \frac{s}{r}.$$

(It is to be specially noted that if any relation of the form $rA = sB$ exist, then A and B have a common measure. This result will be useful afterwards.)

To prove (iii.) :

In this case $rA < sB$,

$$B = rX,$$

$$\therefore rA < s(rX),$$

$$\therefore rA < r(sX), \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore A < sX. \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. VI.}$$

∴ by the fundamental assumption (Art. 29)

$$(A : B) < (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) < (sX : rX),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) < \frac{s}{r}.$$

To prove (iv.) :

In this case $(A : B) > \frac{s}{r}$.

Now $B = rX$,

$$\text{and } \frac{s}{r} = (sX : rX)$$

$$= (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) > (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore A > sX, \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. IX.}$$

$$\therefore rA > r(sX),$$

$$\therefore rA > s(rX). \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore rA > sB.$$

To prove (v.) :

In this case $(A : B) = \frac{s}{r}$.

Now $B = rX$,

$$\frac{s}{r} = (sX : rX)$$

$$= (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) = (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore A = sX, \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. IX.}$$

$$\therefore rA = r(sX)$$

$$= s(rX). \dots\dots\dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore rA = sB.$$

To prove (vi.) :

In this case $(A : B) < \frac{s}{r}$.

Now $B = rX$

$$\frac{s}{r} = (sX : rX)$$

$$= (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) < (sX : B),$$

$$\therefore A < sX, \dots \dots \dots \text{Prop. IX.}$$

$$\therefore rA < r(sX),$$

$$\therefore rA < s(rX), \dots \dots \dots \text{Prop. III.}$$

$$\therefore rA < sB.$$

The Ratio of Two Magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND is a Number Rational or Irrational.

ARTICLE 32

It is now possible to show that if A and B be two magnitudes of the same kind, then the ratio of A to B is a number rational or irrational.

Let any rational number $\frac{t}{u}$ be taken, it will be shown that it is possible to determine whether $(A : B)$ is greater than $\frac{t}{u}$ or equal to $\frac{t}{u}$, or less than $\frac{t}{u}$. For since A and B are magnitudes of the same kind, uA and tB are magnitudes of the same kind, and hence one of the following alternatives must hold :

$$(1) uA > tB; \quad (2) uA = tB; \quad (3) uA < tB;$$

and hence by Prop. X.

$$\text{If } uA > tB, \text{ then } (A : B) > \frac{t}{u}.$$

$$\text{If } uA = tB, \text{ then } (A : B) = \frac{t}{u}.$$

$$\text{If } uA < tB, \text{ then } (A : B) < \frac{t}{u}.$$

Hence it is possible to determine the position of $(A : B)$ with regard to the system of rational numbers.

Hence $(A : B)$ is a number rational or irrational.

Note 1.—In the case in which some integers t, u exist such that $(A : B) = \frac{t}{u}$, then $(A : B)$ is a rational number.

In this case A and B have a common measure (see Prop. X.).

Note 2.—If A and B have no common measure, then no relation of the form

$$uA = tB \text{ or } (A : B) = \frac{t}{u}$$

can exist.

The preceding theory can now be applied to find tests for determining :

- (a) When two ratios are equal ;
- (b) When two ratios are unequal.

Equal Ratios

ARTICLE 33

If two ratios are equal they occupy the same place with regard to the system of rational numbers.

Hence no rational number can lie between them.

We give the following definition of Equal Ratios :

*Two ratios are said to be equal when no rational number lies between them.**

This may be expressed in greater detail as follows :

Suppose that $(A : B) = (C : D)$.

Let $\frac{r}{s}$ represent any rational number whatever.

If now $(A : B)$ be compared with $\frac{r}{s}$, one of three alternatives must hold.

$$(1) (A : B) > \frac{r}{s}; \quad (2) (A : B) = \frac{r}{s}; \quad (3) (A : B) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

(1) If $(A : B) > \frac{r}{s}$, then in order that $\frac{r}{s}$ may not lie between $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$ it is necessary that $(C : D) > \frac{r}{s}$.

If $\therefore (A : B) > \frac{r}{s}$, then $(C : D) > \frac{r}{s}$.

(2) If $(A : B) = \frac{r}{s}$, then in order that no rational number may lie between $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$, it is necessary that $(C : D) = \frac{r}{s}$.

If $\therefore (A : B) = \frac{r}{s}$, then $(C : D) = \frac{r}{s}$;

(3) If $(A : B) < \frac{r}{s}$, then in order that $\frac{r}{s}$ may not lie between $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$, it is necessary that $(C : D) < \frac{r}{s}$.

Hence if $(A : B) < \frac{r}{s}$, then $(C : D) < \frac{r}{s}$.

* This definition does not conflict with what has been said before about equal ratios, see Note in Art. 34.

NOTE ON ARTICLE 33

ARTICLE 34

In the preceding work some cases of equal ratios have been considered.

(1) Ratios which were equal to the same rational number were said to be equal.

(2) When $A = B$ it was laid down as a fundamental principle that

$$(A : C) = (B : C).$$

In the first case it is obvious that no rational number can lie between the equal ratios, and it will now be proved that, when $A = B$, no rational number can lie between

$$(A : C) \text{ and } (B : C).$$

For if possible let some rational number $\frac{p}{q}$ lie between $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$. Let $(A : C)$ be greater than $(B : C)$.

$$\text{Then } (A : C) > \frac{p}{q} > (B : C).$$

$$\text{Since } (A : C) > \frac{p}{q},$$

$$\therefore qA > pC.$$

$$\text{Since } (B : C) < \frac{p}{q},$$

$$\therefore qB < pC,$$

$$\therefore qA > pC > qB,$$

$$\therefore qA > qB,$$

$$\therefore A > B,$$

which is contrary to the hypothesis that $A = B$.

Hence if $A = B$ no rational number can fall between $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$.

The Test for Equal Ratios

ARTICLE 35

Conversely, if *whatever* the integers r and s may be, then

$$\text{if } (A : B) > \frac{r}{s}, \text{ it is also true that } (C : D) > \frac{r}{s};$$

$$\text{but if } (A : B) = \frac{r}{s}, \text{ it is also true that } (C : D) = \frac{r}{s};$$

$$\text{and if } (A : B) < \frac{r}{s}, \text{ it is also true that } (C : D) < \frac{r}{s},$$

then will $(A : B) = (C : D)$,

for these conditions simply express the fact that no rational number lies between $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$,

$$\text{and } \therefore (A : B) = (C : D).$$

Euclid V., Definition 5

ARTICLE 36

Derivation from the preceding article of the conditions of the Fifth Definition of the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements*. This follows immediately by the aid of Prop. X.

If $sA > rB$,

then $(A : B) > \frac{r}{s}$, Prop. X.

$\therefore (C : D) > \frac{r}{s}$, Art. 35.

$\therefore sC > rD$ Prop. X.

If $sA = rB$,

then $(A : B) = \frac{r}{s}$, Prop. X.

$\therefore (C : D) = \frac{r}{s}$, Art. 35.

$\therefore sC = rD$ Prop. X.

If $sA < rB$,

then $(A : B) < \frac{r}{s}$, Prop. X.

$\therefore (C : D) < \frac{r}{s}$, Art. 35.

$\therefore sC < rD$ Prop. X.

Hence, if whatever the integers r, s may be, it is true that

when $sA > rB$, then $sC > rD$; (i.)

but when $sA = rB$, then $sC = rD$; (ii.)

and when $sA < rB$, then $sC < rD$; (iii.)

then is $(A : B) = (C : D)$.

And these are Euclid's conditions.

It will appear in Prop. XI., Art. 40 (Stolz's Theorem) that the set of conditions marked (ii.) is superfluous.

Unequal Ratios

ARTICLE 37

If two ratios are unequal they occupy different places with regard to the system of rational numbers.

Hence some rational number falls between them.

We give the following definition :

*Two ratios are said to be unequal when some rational number falls between them.**

Let $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$ be two unequal ratios. Then some rational number $\frac{u}{v}$ falls between them, and

$$\text{either } (A : B) > \frac{u}{v} > (C : D),$$

$$\text{or else } (A : B) < \frac{u}{v} < (C : D).$$

In the first case $(A : B)$ is said to be greater than $(C : D)$; in the second case $(A : B)$ is said to be less than $(C : D)$.

In the first case,

$$\text{since } (A : B) > \frac{u}{v},$$

$$\therefore vA > uB;$$

$$\text{and since } (C : D) < \frac{u}{v},$$

$$\therefore vC < uD.$$

This may be put thus :

The Test for distinguishing between Unequal Ratios

ARTICLE 38

If $(A : B) > (C : D)$, then integers u, v exist such that
 $vA > uB$, but $vC < uD$.

It will be proved at a later stage that these conditions are equivalent to, though they are not the same in form as, the conditions laid down in the Seventh Definition of the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements*. For the present these conditions will not be required. They have been mentioned here only on account of their close connection in thought with the preceding work.

In the case where $(A : B) < (C : D)$, some rational number $\frac{u}{v}$ exists such that

$$(A : B) < \frac{u}{v} < (C : D).$$

Hence integers u, v exist such that

$$vA < uB, \text{ but } vC > uD.$$

* This definition does not conflict with what was said before about unequal ratios, see Note in Art. 39.

NOTE ON ARTICLES 37-38

ARTICLE 39

In the preceding work a case of unequal ratios was considered. It was laid down as a fundamental principle that

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{if } A > B, \\ & \text{then } (A : C) > (B : C). \end{aligned}$$

In this case it will be proved that a rational number falls between $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$.

It was shown in the Corollary to Prop. VIII. that if $A > B$, then integers n, t exist such that

$$\begin{aligned} nA &> tC > nB. \\ \text{Since } nA &> tC, \\ \therefore (A : C) &> \frac{t}{n}. \\ \text{Since } nB &< tC, \\ \therefore (B : C) &< \frac{t}{n}, \\ \therefore (A : C) &> \frac{t}{n} > (B : C). \end{aligned}$$

Hence the rational number $\frac{t}{n}$ falls between $(A : C)$ and $(B : C)$.

Simplification of the Test for Equal Ratios (Stolz's Theorem)

ARTICLE 40

I proceed now to show that the second of the three sets of conditions in the Test for Equal Ratios (Art. 35) is superfluous.

Prop. XI. If all values of r, s which make

$$sA > rB \text{ also make } sC > rD \dots\dots\dots \text{(I.)}$$

and

$$\text{if all values of } r, s \text{ which make}$$

$$sA < rB \text{ also make } sC < rD \dots\dots\dots \text{(II.)}$$

and if any values of r, s exist, say $r=r_1, s=s_1$ which make $s_1A=r_1B$, then must also $s_1C=r_1D$.

By hypothesis $s_1A=r_1B$.

Suppose if possible s_1C is not equal to r_1D .

Hence either

$$\text{(i.) } s_1C > r_1D.$$

$\therefore s_1C - r_1D$ is a magnitude of the same kind as D .

\therefore An integer n exists such that

$$n(s_1C - r_1D) > D,$$

$$\therefore ns_1C > (nr_1 + 1)D,$$

$$\text{but } s_1A = r_1B,$$

$$\therefore ns_1A = nr_1B < (nr_1 + 1)B.$$

$$\text{Hence } ns_1A < (nr_1 + 1)B,$$

$$\text{but } ns_1C > (nr_1 + 1)D,$$

and \therefore putting $s = ns_1$, $r = nr_1 + 1$, it is seen that for these values of r , s the hypothesis (II.) is not satisfied.

$$\therefore s_1C \text{ is not greater than } r_1D.$$

Or

$$(ii.) \quad s_1C < r_1D.$$

$\therefore r_1D - s_1C$ is a magnitude of the same kind as D .

\therefore An integer n exists such that

$$n(r_1D - s_1C) > D,$$

$$\therefore ns_1C < (nr_1 - 1)D,$$

$$\text{but } s_1A = r_1B,$$

$$\therefore ns_1A = nr_1B > (nr_1 - 1)B.$$

$$\text{Hence } ns_1A > (nr_1 - 1)B,$$

$$\text{but } ns_1C < (nr_1 - 1)D,$$

and \therefore putting $s = ns_1$, $r = nr_1 - 1$, it is seen that for these values of r , s the hypothesis (I.) is not satisfied.

$$\therefore s_1C \text{ is not less than } r_1D.$$

It has now been shown that s_1C is neither greater nor less than r_1D .

$$\therefore s_1C = r_1D.$$

Hence the second set of conditions in Euclid's Definition is involved in the first and third sets of conditions. It is therefore superfluous.

$$\text{Hence } (A : B) = (C : D),$$

if all values of r , s which make $sA > rB$ also make $sC > rD$, and if all values of r , s which make $sA < rB$ also make $sC < rD$.

$$\text{Hence if whenever } (A : B) > \frac{r}{s}, \text{ then also } (C : D) > \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\text{and if whenever } (A : B) < \frac{r}{s}, \text{ then also } (C : D) < \frac{r}{s},$$

whatever integers r, s may be, then will $(A : B) = (C : D)$, and it is not necessary to show also that

$$\text{if } (A : B) = \frac{r}{s}, \text{ then } (C : D) = \frac{r}{s}.$$

Magnitudes in Proportion

If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, the magnitudes A, B, C, D are said to be proportionals, or in proportion.

The proportion is usually written thus :

$$A : B :: C : D,$$

and is read "the ratio of A to B is the same as the ratio of C to D ."

A and D are called the extremes, B and C the means of the proportion. D is called the fourth proportional to A, B and C .

If $C = B$ so that $(A : B) = (B : D)$, then the three magnitudes A, B, D are said to be in proportion, B is said to be a mean proportional between A and D , and D is said to be a third proportional to A and B .

Recapitulation of the Chief Points of the Preceding Theory

ARTICLE 41

Before illustrating the preceding theory it is well to recapitulate the chief points which have to be borne in mind in what follows.

(1) Numbers exist which are not rational numbers. They are called irrational numbers. They are in the technical sense of the words magnitudes of the same kind as the rational numbers (Art. 24).

(2) An irrational number is determined when a rule is given which makes it possible to decide whether the irrational number is greater or less than any rational number whatever. An irrational number has therefore a definite place amongst the rational numbers (Art. 26).

(3) If A and B are any two magnitudes of the same kind, then the ratio of A to B is a number rational or irrational (Art. 32).

(4) Two ratios are equal when no rational number lies between them (Art. 33).

CHAPTER VII

ARTICLES 42-49

Properties of Equal Ratios. First Group of Propositions.

ARTICLE 42

THE proofs of the following propositions may be conducted on the same lines. They are independent of one another and may be taken in any order.

Prop. XII. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 then $(rA : sB) = (rC : sD)$ Euc. V. 4.

Prop. XIII. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 then $(B : A) = (D : C)$.
Euc. V. Corollary to 4.

Prop. XIV. If $(A : B) = (C : D) = (E : F)$, and if all the
 magnitudes are *of the same kind*, then
 $(A : B) = (A + C + E : B + D + F)$.
Euc. V. 12.

Prop. XV. $(A : B) = (nA : nB)$ Euc. V. 15.

Prop. XVI. If $(A : B) = (X : Y)$,
 then $(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y)$. . . Euc. V. 18.

Prop. XVII. If $(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y)$,
 then $(A : B) = (X : Y)$ Euc. V. 17.

ARTICLE 43

Prop. XII. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, to show that
 $(rA : sB) = (rC : sD)$ Euc. V. 4.

Let $\frac{p}{q}$ denote *any* rational number *whatever*, then it follows from Art. 40 that it is sufficient to consider the following alternatives :

Either $(rA : sB) > \frac{p}{q}$,
 $\therefore q(rA) > p(sB)$,
 $\therefore (q(r))A > (p(s))B$,
 $\therefore (A : B) > \frac{p(s)}{q(r)}$.
 But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 $\therefore (C : D) > \frac{p(s)}{q(r)}$,
 $\therefore (q(r))C > (p(s))D$,
 $\therefore q(rC) > p(sD)$,
 $\therefore (rC : sD) > \frac{p}{q}$.

Hence if $(rA : sB) > \frac{p}{q}$,
 then $(rC : sD) > \frac{p}{q}$.

Or $(rA : sB) < \frac{p}{q}$,
 $\therefore q(rA) < p(sB)$,
 $\therefore (q(r))A < (p(s))B$,
 $\therefore (A : B) < \frac{p(s)}{q(r)}$.
 But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 $\therefore (C : D) < \frac{p(s)}{q(r)}$,
 $\therefore (q(r))C < (p(s))D$,
 $\therefore q(rC) < p(sD)$,
 $\therefore (rC : sD) < \frac{p}{q}$.

Hence if $(rA : sB) < \frac{p}{q}$,
 then $(rC : sD) < \frac{p}{q}$.

Hence no rational number can lie between $(rA : sB)$ and $(rC : sD)$.

$$\therefore (rA : sB) = (rC : sD).$$

ARTICLE 44

Prop. XIII. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 then $(B : A) = (D : C)$ Euc. V. Cor. to 4.

It has to be shown that no rational number falls between $(B : A)$ and $(D : C)$.

Let $\frac{s}{t}$ be any rational number whatever. Then it is sufficient to consider the alternatives :

If $(B : A) > \frac{s}{t}$,
 then $tB > sA$,
 $\therefore sA < tB$,
 $\therefore (A : B) < \frac{t}{s}$.
 But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 $\therefore (C : D) < \frac{t}{s}$,
 $\therefore sC < tD$,
 $\therefore tD > sC$,
 $\therefore (D : C) > \frac{s}{t}$.

If $(B : A) < \frac{s}{t}$,
 then $tB < sA$,
 $\therefore sA > tB$,
 $\therefore (A : B) > \frac{t}{s}$.
 But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 $\therefore (C : D) > \frac{t}{s}$,
 $\therefore sC > tD$,
 $\therefore tD < sC$,
 $\therefore (D : C) < \frac{s}{t}$.

Hence if $(B : A) > \frac{s}{t}$,
then $(D : C) > \frac{s}{t}$.

Hence if $(B : A) < \frac{s}{t}$,
then $(D : C) < \frac{s}{t}$.

Hence no rational number lies between $(B : A)$ and $(D : C)$.
 $\therefore (B : A) = (D : C)$.

ARTICLE 45

Prop. XIV. If $(A : B) = (C : D) = (E : F)$,
and if all the magnitudes are of the same kind,
then $(A : B) = (A + C + E : B + D + F)$.

Euc. V. 12.

It has to be shown that no rational number lies between
 $(A : B)$ and $(A + C + E : B + D + F)$.

Let $\frac{p}{q}$ be any rational number whatever. Then it is sufficient
to consider the alternatives :

$(A : B) > \frac{p}{q}$.
Then since
 $(A : B) = (C : D) = (E : F)$,
it follows that
 $(C : D) > \frac{p}{q}$,
 $(E : F) > \frac{p}{q}$.
Hence $qA > pB$,
 $qC > pD$,
 $qE > pF$,
 $\therefore q(A + C + E) > p(B + D + F)$,
 $\therefore (A + C + E : B + D + F) > \frac{p}{q}$.
Hence if $(A : B) > \frac{p}{q}$,
then $(A + C + E : B + D + F) > \frac{p}{q}$.

$(A : B) < \frac{p}{q}$.
Then since
 $(A : B) = (C : D) = (E : F)$,
it follows that
 $(C : D) < \frac{p}{q}$,
 $(E : F) < \frac{p}{q}$.
Hence $qA < pB$,
 $qC < pD$,
 $qE < pF$,
 $\therefore q(A + C + E) < p(B + D + F)$,
 $\therefore (A + C + E : B + D + F) < \frac{p}{q}$.
Hence if $(A : B) < \frac{p}{q}$,
then $(A + C + E : B + D + F) < \frac{p}{q}$.

Hence no rational number falls between

$(A : B)$ and $(A + C + E : B + D + F)$,
 $\therefore (A : B) = (A + C + E : B + D + F)$.

In like manner it can be proved that

if $(A_1 : B_1) = (A_2 : B_2) = \dots = (A_n : B_n)$,
and if all the magnitudes are of the same kind,
then $(A_1 : B_1) = (A_1 + A_2 + \dots + A_n : B_1 + B_2 + \dots + B_n)$.

ARTICLE 46

Prop. XV. To prove that $(A : B) = (nA : nB)$. . . Euc. V. 15.
It has to be shown that no rational number falls between

$$(A : B) \text{ and } (nA : nB).$$

Let $\frac{t}{v}$ be any rational number whatever. Then it is enough to consider the alternatives :

$(A : B) > \frac{t}{v},$ $\therefore vA > tB,$ $\therefore n(vA) > n(tB),$ $\therefore v(nA) > t(nB),$ $\therefore (nA : nB) > \frac{t}{v}.$ <p>Hence if $(A : B) > \frac{t}{v}$,</p> <p>then $(nA : nB) > \frac{t}{v}$.</p>		$(A : B) < \frac{t}{v},$ $vA < tB,$ $n(vA) < n(tB),$ $\therefore v(nA) < t(nB),$ $\therefore (nA : nB) < \frac{t}{v}.$ <p>Hence if $(A : B) < \frac{t}{v}$,</p> <p>then $(nA : nB) < \frac{t}{v}$.</p>
--	--	--

Hence no rational number lies between

$$(A : B) \text{ and } (nA : nB),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) = (nA : nB).$$

Note.—This is a particular case of the preceding proposition, viz. that in which $A_1 = A_2 = \dots = A_n = A$,
and $B_1 = B_2 = \dots = B_n = B$.

ARTICLE 47

Prop. XVI. If $(A : B) = (X : Y)$,
then $(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y)$. . . Euc. V. 18.

Compare $(A + B : B)$ with any rational number whatever, $\frac{r}{s}$.
It is sufficient to consider the alternatives :

<p>Either $(A + B : B) > \frac{r}{s}$,</p> $\therefore s(A + B) > rB.$ <p>It is necessary to take separately the cases $s < r, s = r, s > r$.</p> <p>(i.) $s < r, sA > (r - s)B$,</p> $(A : B) > \frac{r - s}{s},$ <p>but $(A : B) = (X : Y)$,</p>		<p>Or $(A + B : B) < \frac{r}{s}$,</p> $\therefore s(A + B) < rB.$ <p>In this case s must be $< r$,</p> $\therefore sA < (r - s)B,$ $(A : B) < \frac{r - s}{s},$ <p>but $(A : B) = (X : Y)$,</p>
---	--	--

$$\therefore (X : Y) > \frac{r-s}{s},$$

$$\therefore sX > (r-s)Y,$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) > rY,$$

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$(ii.) \quad s=r, \quad sY=rY,$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) > rY,$$

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$(iii.) \quad s > r, \quad sY > rY,$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) > rY,$$

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\text{Hence if } (A+B : B) > \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\text{then } (X+Y : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\therefore (X : Y) < \frac{r-s}{s},$$

$$\therefore sX < (r-s)Y,$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) < rY,$$

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\text{Hence if } (A+B : B) < \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\text{then } (X+Y : Y) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

Hence no rational number lies between $(A+B : B)$ and $(X+Y : Y)$.

$$\therefore (A+B : B) = (X+Y : Y).$$

ARTICLE 48

Prop. XVII. If $(A+B : B) = (X+Y : Y)$ it is required to prove that $(A : B) = (X : Y)$ Euc. V. 17.

Compare $(A : B)$ with *any* rational number *whatever*, $\frac{r}{s}$.

Then it is sufficient to consider the alternatives :

$$(i.) \quad (A : B) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

In this case $sA > rB$,

$$\therefore s(A+B) > (r+s)B,$$

$$\therefore (A+B : B) > \frac{r+s}{s},$$

but $(A+B : B) = (X+Y : Y)$,

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) > \frac{r+s}{s},$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) > (r+s)Y,$$

$$\therefore sX > rY,$$

$$\therefore (X : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\text{Hence if } (A : B) > \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\text{then } (X : Y) > \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$(ii.) \quad (A : B) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

In this case $sA < rB$,

$$\therefore s(A+B) < (r+s)B,$$

$$\therefore (A+B : B) < \frac{r+s}{s},$$

but $(A+B : B) = (X+Y : Y)$,

$$\therefore (X+Y : Y) < \frac{r+s}{s},$$

$$\therefore s(X+Y) < (r+s)Y,$$

$$\therefore sX < rY,$$

$$\therefore (X : Y) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

$$\text{Hence if } (A : B) < \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\text{then } (X : Y) < \frac{r}{s}.$$

Hence no rational number can lie between

$$(A : B) \text{ and } (X : Y),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) = (X : Y).$$

ARTICLE 49

As a geometrical illustration take the proposition that the ratio of the areas of two triangles of equal altitudes is equal to the ratio of the lengths of their bases (Euc. VI. 1).

The proof depends on the following :

- (1) If two triangles of equal altitudes have equal bases their areas are equal.
- (2) If two triangles of equal altitudes have unequal bases the one with the larger base has the larger area.
- (3) If two triangles having the same altitude are such that the base of one is equal to r times the base of the other, then the area of the first is equal to r times the area of the second (it being understood that r is some positive whole number).

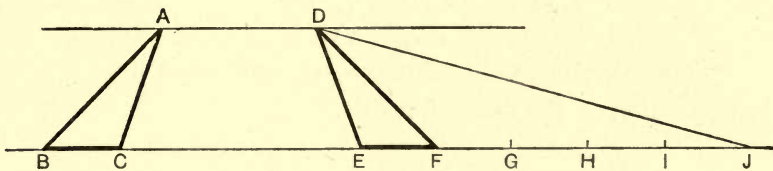


FIG. 6.

Let the triangles ABC , DEJ have the same altitude.
Suppose that $EJ = r(BC)$.

It is required to prove that

$$\triangle DEJ = r(\triangle ABC).$$

EJ can be divided into r pieces each equal to BC .

Suppose that EF , FG , GH , HI , IJ are these r pieces.

Then the triangles DEF , DFG , DGH , DHI , DIJ are each equal to the triangle ABC .

Now EJ contains r parts each equal to BC .

Hence the triangle DEJ is divided into r triangles each equal to ABC .

$$\therefore \triangle DEJ = r(\triangle ABC).$$

Proceeding now to the proposition.

Let ABC and DEF be any two triangles having equal altitudes, and let BC , EF be their bases. It is required to prove that

$$(BC : EF) = (\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF).$$

It has to be shown that no rational number can fall between the two ratios.

Take *any* rational number *whatever*, $\frac{s}{r}$. If it be compared with $(BC : EF)$, then one of the following alternatives must occur :

$$(i.) (BC : EF) > \frac{s}{r}. \quad (ii.) (BC : EF) = \frac{s}{r}. \quad (iii.) (BC : EF) < \frac{s}{r}.$$

It is known by Prop. XI. (Stolz's Theorem), Art. 40, that we need not consider the second alternative.*

Take the first alternative :

$$(BC : EF) > \frac{s}{r},$$

$$\therefore r(BC) > s(EF).$$

Now set off $BR = r(BC)$,

and $ES = s(EF)$.

Since the triangles have the same altitude they may be placed between the same parallels.

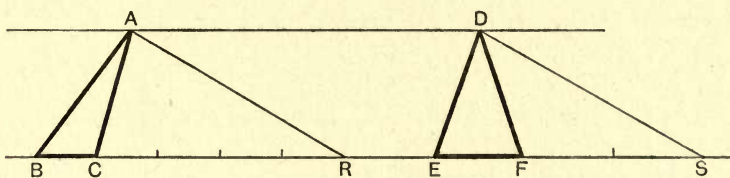


FIG. 7.

Join AR and DS .

Then since $BR = r(BC)$,

\therefore by (3) above $\triangle ABR = r(\triangle ABC)$,

and since $ES = s(EF)$,

\therefore by (3) above $\triangle DES = s(\triangle DEF)$.

* There is no difficulty in considering it in this case, as there is in some of the propositions which follow.

Now $r(BC) > s(EF)$,
 i.e. $BR > ES$,
 \therefore by (2) above $\triangle ABR > \triangle DES$,
 i.e. $r(\triangle ABC) > s(\triangle DEF)$,

$$\therefore (\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF) > \frac{s}{r}.$$

Hence if $(BC : EF) > \frac{s}{r}$,
 then $(\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF) > \frac{s}{r}$. (I.)

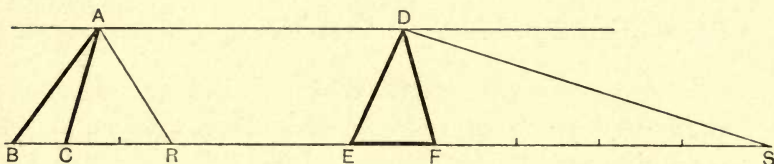


FIG. 8.

Take now the alternative :

$$(BC : EF) < \frac{s}{r},$$

$$\therefore r(BC) < s(EF).$$

As before set off, $BR = r(BC)$
 and $ES = s(EF)$.

Join AR, DS .

As before, $\triangle ABR = r(\triangle ABC)$
 and $\triangle DES = s(\triangle DEF)$,
 Since $r(BC) < s(EF)$,
 $\therefore BR < ES$.

Hence by (2) above $\triangle ABR < \triangle DES$,
 i.e. $r(\triangle ABC) < s(\triangle DEF)$,

$$\therefore (\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF) < \frac{s}{r}.$$

Hence if $(BC : EF) < \frac{s}{r}$,
 then $(\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF) < \frac{s}{r}$. (II.)

It follows from (I.) and (II.) that no rational number falls between

$$(BC : EF) \text{ and } (\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF),$$

$$\therefore (BC : EF) = (\triangle ABC : \triangle DEF).$$

CHAPTER VIII

ARTICLES 50-53

Properties of Equal Ratios. Second Group of Propositions.

ARTICLE 50

Prop. XVIII. If A, B, C, D be four magnitudes of the same kind, and if

$$(A : B) = (C : D),$$

then $(A : C) = (B : D)$ Euc. V. 16.

Corollary :

If also $A > C$, then $B > D$;
 but if $A = C$, then $B = D$;
 and if $A < C$, then $B < D$ Euc. V. 14.

Prop. XIX. If $(A : B) = (T : U)$,
 and if $(B : C) = (U : V)$,
 then $(A : C) = (T : V)$ Euc. V. 22.

From this follows as a corollary :

If also $A > C$, then $T > V$;
 but if $A = C$, then $T = V$.
 and if $A < C$, then $T < V$ Euc. V. 20.

Prop. XX. If $(A : B) = (U : V)$,
 and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$,
 then $(A : C) = (T : V)$ Euc. V. 23.

From this follows a corollary (Euc. V. 21) the statement of which is identical with that of the Corollary to Prop. XIX.

These propositions are independent of one another, and they may therefore be proved in any order.

The proofs differ from those of the preceding propositions in that they depend on Prop. VIII. or its Corollary.

The proofs of Props. XVIII. and XX. require in addition the Corollary to Prop. III.

Prop. III. and its Corollary amount to this, that the factors of a product can be taken in any order.

In explaining these propositions to beginners the teacher would, I think, be well advised to take this result for granted, as I have done in the proofs of Props. XVIII. and XIX.

On the other hand, the proof of Prop. XX. is set out in a perfectly formal way with reference to the Corollary to Prop. III.

ARTICLE 51

Prop. XVIII. If A, B, C, D be four magnitudes of the same kind, and if

$$(A : B) = (C : D),$$

to prove that $(A : C) = (B : D)$ Euc. V. 16.

It has to be shown that *no* rational fraction *whatever* can lie between $(A : C)$ and $(B : D)$.

Let $\frac{s}{r}$ represent *any* rational number *whatever*. Comparing it with $(A : C)$, it is necessary to consider only the alternatives :

$$(1) (A : C) > \frac{s}{r},$$

$$\therefore rA > sC.$$

Hence $rA - sC$ is a magnitude of the same kind as A, B, C, D .

Compare it with either B or D , say with B .

Then by Archimedes' Axiom an integer n exists such that

$$n(rA - sC) > B,$$

$$\therefore nrA > nsC + B,$$

\therefore an integer t exists such that

$$nrA > tB > nsC$$

(Prop. VIII.).

Since $nrA > tB$,

$$\therefore (A : B) > \frac{t}{nr}.$$

$$(2) (A : C) < \frac{s}{r},$$

$$\therefore rA < sC.$$

Hence $sC - rA$ is a magnitude of the same kind as A, B, C, D .

Compare it with either B or D , say with D .

Then by Archimedes' Axiom an integer p exists such that

$$p(sC - rA) > D,$$

$$psC > prA + D,$$

\therefore an integer u exists such that

$$psC > uD > prA$$

(Prop. VIII.).

Since $psC > uD$,

$$\therefore (C : D) > \frac{u}{ps}.$$

But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,

$$\therefore (C : D) > \frac{t}{nr},$$

$$\therefore nrC > tD.$$

But $tB > nsC$,

$$\therefore rtB > rnsC > stD,$$

$$rtB > stD,$$

$$rB > sD,$$

$$\therefore (B : D) > \frac{s}{r}.$$

But $(A : B) = (C : D)$,

$$\therefore (A : B) > \frac{u}{ps},$$

$$\therefore psA > uB.$$

But $uD > prA$,

$$\therefore ruB < rpsA < suD,$$

$$\therefore ruB < suD,$$

$$\therefore rB < sD,$$

$$\therefore (B : D) < \frac{s}{r}.$$

Hence if $(A : C) > \frac{s}{r}$, then $(B : D) > \frac{s}{r}$; but if $(A : C) < \frac{s}{r}$, then $(B : D) < \frac{s}{r}$.

Hence no rational number lies between $(A : C)$ and $(B : D)$.

$$\therefore (A : C) = (B : D).$$

Corollary :

To prove that with the data in the proposition

If $A > C$, then $B > D$.

If $A = C$, then $B = D$.

If $A < C$, then $B < D$ Euc. V. 14.

Since $(A : C) = (B : D)$,

let us compare $(A : C)$ with the rational number 1.

Then one of the following alternatives must hold :

(1) $(A : C) > 1,$

$$\therefore (B : D) > 1.$$

Hence if $A > C$,
then $B > D$.

(2) $(A : C) = 1,$

$$\therefore (B : D) = 1.$$

Hence if $A = C$,
then $B = D$.

(3) $(A : C) < 1.$

$$\therefore (B : D) < 1,$$

Hence if $A < C$,
then $B < D$.

ARTICLE 52

Prop. XIX. If A, B, C are three magnitudes of the same kind, and if T, U, V are three magnitudes of the same kind, and if

$$(A : B) = (T : U),$$

$$\text{and if } (B : C) = (U : V),$$

to prove that $(A : C) = (T : V)$ Euc. V. 22.

It has to be shown that no rational number falls between $(A : C)$ and $(T : V)$.

Let $\frac{k}{l}$ denote any rational number whatever. Then comparing it with $(A : C)$, it is necessary to consider only the alternatives :

$$(1) \quad (A : C) > \frac{k}{l}, \\ \therefore lA > kC,$$

$\therefore lA - kC$ is a magnitude of the same kind as A, B, C .

Comparing it with B , it follows by Archimedes' Axiom that an integer v exists such that

$$v(lA - kC) > B, \\ \therefore vlA > vkC + B,$$

\therefore an integer w exists such that

$$vlA > wB > vkC \\ (\text{Prop. VIII.}).$$

Since $vlA > wB$,

$$\therefore (A : B) > \frac{w}{vl}.$$

But $(A : B) = (T : U)$,

$$\therefore (T : U) > \frac{w}{vl},$$

$$\therefore vlT > wU.$$

But $wB > vkC$,

$$\therefore (B : C) > \frac{vk}{w}.$$

Now $(B : C) = (U : V)$,

$$\therefore (U : V) > \frac{vk}{w},$$

$$\therefore wU > vkV,$$

$$\therefore vlT > wU > vkV,$$

$$\therefore vlT > vkV,$$

$$lT > kV,$$

$$(T : V) > \frac{k}{l}.$$

$$(2) \quad (A : C) < \frac{k}{l}, \\ \therefore lA < kC,$$

$\therefore kC - lA$ is a magnitude of the same kind as A, B, C .

Comparing it with B , it follows by Archimedes' Axiom that an integer n exists such that

$$n(kC - lA) > B, \\ nkC > nlA + B,$$

\therefore an integer r exists such that

$$nlA < rB < nkC \\ (\text{Prop. VIII.}).$$

Since $nlA < rB$,

$$\therefore (A : B) < \frac{r}{nl}.$$

But $(A : B) = (T : U)$,

$$\therefore (T : U) < \frac{r}{nl},$$

$$\therefore nlT < rU.$$

But $rB < nkC$,

$$\therefore (B : C) < \frac{nk}{r}.$$

Now $(B : C) = (U : V)$,

$$\therefore (U : V) < \frac{nk}{r},$$

$$\therefore rU < nkV,$$

$$\therefore nlT < rU < nkV,$$

$$\therefore nlT < nkV,$$

$$\therefore lT < kV,$$

$$\therefore (T : V) < \frac{k}{l}.$$

Hence if $(A : C) > \frac{k}{l}$, then $(T : V) > \frac{k}{l}$; but if $(A : C) < \frac{k}{l}$, then $(T : V) < \frac{k}{l}$.

Hence no rational number falls between

$$(A : C) \text{ and } (T : V),$$

$$\therefore (A : C) = (T : V).$$

Corollary (Euc. V. 20) :

To prove that with the data in the proposition

$$\text{If } A > C, \text{ then } T > V.$$

$$\text{If } A = C, \text{ then } T = V.$$

$$\text{If } A < C, \text{ then } T < V.$$

The proof can be derived from that of the Corollary to Prop. XVIII. by changing therein B into T , and D into V .

ARTICLE 53

Prop. XX. If $(A : B) = (U : V)$, and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, then $(A : C) = (T : V)$. (Euc. V. 23).

Compare $A : C$ with *any* rational number *whatever*, $\frac{r}{s}$.

It is necessary to consider the two following alternatives only :

$$\text{Either } (A : C) > \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\therefore sA > rC.$$

Now B is a magnitude of the same kind as sA , rC .

Hence by the Corollary to Prop. VIII. integers n , t exist such that

$$n(sA) > tB > n(rC).$$

$$\text{Now } (n(s))A = n(sA) > tB,$$

$$\therefore (A : B) > \frac{t}{n(s)},$$

$$\text{But } (U : V) = (A : B) > \frac{t}{n(s)},$$

$$\therefore (n(s))U > tV \dots (I.)$$

$$\text{Also } tB > n(rC),$$

$$\therefore tB > (n(r))C,$$

$$\therefore (B : C) > \frac{n(r)}{t}.$$

$$\text{Or } (A : C) < \frac{r}{s},$$

$$\therefore sA < rC.$$

Now B is a magnitude of the same kind as sA , rC .

Hence by the Corollary to Prop. VIII. integers n , t exist such that

$$n(sA) < tB < n(rC).$$

$$\text{Now } (n(s))A = n(sA) < tB,$$

$$\therefore (A : B) < \frac{t}{n(s)}.$$

$$\text{But } (U : V) = (A : B) < \frac{t}{n(s)},$$

$$\therefore (n(s))U < tV \dots (III.)$$

$$\text{Also } tB < n(rC),$$

$$\therefore tB < (n(r))C,$$

$$\therefore (B : C) < \frac{n(r)}{t}.$$

Now $(T : U) = (B : C) > \frac{n(r)}{t}$,
 $\therefore tT > (n(r))U$. (II.)

We have to eliminate U between (I.) and (II.),

$s(tT) > s[(n(r))U]$ from (II.),
 $s[(n(r))U] = r[(n(s))U]$,

by Cor. to Prop. III.

Also $r[(n(s))U] > r(tV)$ from (I.),

$\therefore s(tT) > r(tV)$,
 $\therefore t(sT) > t(rV)$,
 $\therefore sT > rV$,

$\therefore (T : V) > \frac{r}{s}$.

If $\therefore (A : C) > \frac{r}{s}$,

then $(T : V) > \frac{r}{s}$.

Now $(T : U) = (B : C) < \frac{n(r)}{t}$,
 $\therefore tT < (n(r))U$... (IV.)

We have to eliminate U between (III.) and (IV.),

$s(tT) < s[(n(r))U]$ from (IV.),
 $s[(n(r))U] = r[(n(s))U]$,

by Cor. to Prop. III.

Also $r[(n(s))U] < r(tV)$ from (III.),

$\therefore s(tT) < r(tV)$,
 $\therefore t(sT) < t(rV)$,
 $\therefore sT < rV$,

$\therefore (T : V) < \frac{r}{s}$.

If $\therefore (A : C) < \frac{r}{s}$,

then $(T : V) < \frac{r}{s}$.

Hence no rational number lies between $(A : C)$ and $(T : V)$.

$\therefore (A : C) = (T : V)$.

Corollary (Euc. V. 21) :

To prove that with the data in the proposition

If $A > C$, then $T > V$.

If $A = C$, then $T = V$.

If $A < C$, then $T < V$.

The proof can be derived from that of the Corollary to Prop. XVIII. by changing therein B into T , and D into V .

CHAPTER IX

ARTICLES 54-57

Properties of Equal Ratios. Third Group of Propositions.

ARTICLE 54

Prop. XXI. If $(A + C : B + D) = (C : D)$,
 then $(A : B) = (C : D)$ Euc. V. 19.

Prop. XXII. If $(A : C) = (X : Z)$, and if $(B : C) = (Y : Z)$,
 then $(A + B : C) = (X + Y : Z)$.
Euc. V. 24.

Prop. XXIII. If A, B, C, D are four magnitudes of the
 same kind, if A be the greatest of them,

and if $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 then $A + D > B + C$ Euc. V. 25.

As in the Fifth Book, the proofs of these propositions are made to depend on the proofs of the preceding propositions. They could be proved in a manner having some resemblance to those of the earlier propositions, but the proofs are complicated and difficult ; and altogether unsuited for an elementary course of instruction.

It will be seen that the proofs of these propositions are not automatic like those which have gone before. They involve a considerable strain on the memory, but on the whole they are very much simpler than any other proofs known to me.

ARTICLE 55

Prop. XXI. If $(A + C : B + D) = (C : D)$,
 to prove that $(A : B) = (C : D)$ Euc. V. 19.

Since $(A + C : B + D) = (C : D)$,

∴ by Prop. XVIII.

$$(A + C : C) = (B + D : D),$$

∴ by Prop. XVII.

$$(A : C) = (B : D),$$

∴ by Prop. XVIII.

$$(A : B) = (C : D).$$

ARTICLE 56

Prop. XXII. (Euc. V. 24).

If $(A : C) = (X : Z)$,

and if $(B : C) = (Y : Z)$,

to prove that $(A + B : C) = (X + Y : Z)$.

Since $(B : C) = (Y : Z)$,

∴ by Prop. XIII.

$$(C : B) = (Z : Y).$$

Now $(A : C) = (X : Z)$,

and $(C : B) = (Z : Y)$,

∴ by Prop. XIX.

$$(A : B) = (X : Y),$$

∴ by Prop. XVI.

$$(A + B : B) = (X + Y : Y).$$

But $(B : C) = (Y : Z)$,

∴ by Prop. XIX.

$$(A + B : C) = (X + Y : Z).$$

ARTICLE 57

Prop. XXIII. If A, B, C, D are four magnitudes of the same kind, if A be the greatest of them,

and if $(A : B) = (C : D)$,

then $(A + D) > (B + C)$Euc. V. 25.

Since $A > B$,

$$\therefore (A : B) > 1,$$

$$\therefore (C : D) > 1,$$

$$\therefore C > D.$$

Since $(A : B) = (C : D)$,

∴ by Prop. XVIII.

$$(A : C) = (B : D).$$

But $A > C$,

$$\therefore (A : C) > 1,$$

$$\therefore (B : D) > 1,$$

$$\therefore B > D.$$

Hence D is the smallest of the four magnitudes.

$$\text{Since } (A : B) = (C : D),$$

\therefore by Prop. XVII.

$$(A - B : B) = (C - D : D),$$

\therefore by Prop. XVIII.

$$(A - B : C - D) = (B : D).$$

$$\text{But } B > D,$$

$$\therefore (B : D) > 1,$$

$$\therefore (A - B : C - D) > 1,$$

$$\therefore A - B > C - D,$$

$$\therefore A + D > B + C.$$

PART II

CHAPTER X

ARTICLES 58-67

Geometrical Applications of Stolz's Theorem (Art. 40).

ARTICLE 58

ALL the properties of equal ratios that can be put into an elementary course have now been given.

I will now give a remarkable application of Stolz's Theorem, due to my friend, Mr. Rose-Innes, to prove that the areas of circles are proportional to the squares described on their radii.

Some preliminary propositions from the Tenth and Twelfth Books of Euclid's *Elements* are required. They are set out here in order to make the argument complete in itself.

Euclid X. 1

If A and B be two magnitudes OF THE SAME KIND, of which A is the larger, and if from A more than its half be taken away, leaving a remainder R_1 ; and if from R_1 more than its half be taken away, leaving a remainder R_2 ; and so on, then if this process be continued long enough, the remainder left will be less than B.

This is deduced by repeated applications of the following :

If X and Y be two magnitudes of the same kind, and if X be greater than Y , then if from X less than its half be taken away, and if from Y more than its half be taken away, then the remainder of X left is greater than the remainder of Y .

If from X less than $\frac{1}{2}X$ is taken, more than $\frac{1}{2}X$ is left.

If from Y more than $\frac{1}{2}Y$ is taken, less than $\frac{1}{2}Y$ is left.

But since $X > Y$,

$$\frac{1}{2}X > \frac{1}{2}Y,$$

\therefore (more than $\frac{1}{2}X$) $>$ (less than $\frac{1}{2}Y$).

To apply this to Euc. X. 1.

Since $A > B$ it follows by Archimedes' Axiom that an integer n exists such that

$$nB > A.$$

From the greater magnitude nB take away B , which is less than $\frac{1}{2}nB$. The remainder is $(n-1)B$.

From the smaller magnitude A take away more than its half. Let the remainder be R_1 ,

$\therefore (n-1)B > R_1$ by what has just been proved.

From the greater magnitude $(n-1)B$, take away B , which is less than $\frac{1}{2}(n-1)B$. The remainder is $(n-2)B$.

From the smaller magnitude R_1 take away more than its half. Let the remainder be R_2 ,

$$\therefore (n-2)B > R_2.$$

Proceeding thus we get after s applications

$$(n-s)B > R_s,$$

and \therefore after $(n-2)$ applications

$$2B > R_{n-2}.$$

Now take from R_{n-2} more than its half.

Let the remainder be R_{n-1} .

$$\text{Then } \frac{1}{2}R_{n-2} > R_{n-1}.$$

$$\text{But } B > \frac{1}{2}R_{n-2},$$

$$\therefore B > R_{n-1}.$$

So that after $(n-1)$ operations on A , the remainder of A left, viz. R_{n-1} , is less than B .

ARTICLE 59

As a geometrical application of this result take the following from the Second Proposition of the Twelfth Book of Euclid's *Elements* :

If a regular polygon of 2^n sides be inscribed in a circle, then the part of the circular area outside the polygon can be made as small as we please by making n large enough.

Take a segment of a circle which is a semicircle or less than a semicircle.

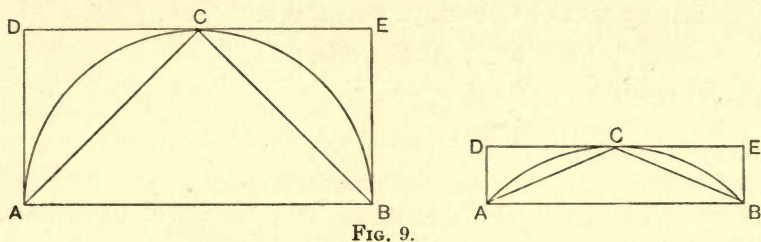


FIG. 9.

Let its chord be AB , and the middle point of its arc C .

Through C draw a tangent to the circle. This is parallel to AB .

Let the perpendiculars to AB , through A and B , cut the tangent at C at D, E .

Then the triangle ABC is equal to the sum of the triangles ACD, BCE .

Hence the triangle ABC is greater than the sum of the segments cut off by AC, BC .

Hence the triangle ABC is greater than half the area of the segment ABC ; and therefore if the triangular area ABC be removed from the segment, the remainder left is less than half the original segment.

Suppose now that a square $ABCD$ is inscribed in a circle, then if the square be cut out from the circular area less than half the circular area is left. The part cut out is shaded.

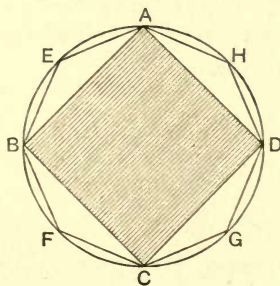


FIG. 10.

Let each of the arcs AB , BC , CD , DA be bisected at E , F , G , H respectively.

Then from the unshaded area remove the triangles

AEB , BFC , CGD , DHA .

Then by what has been proved the triangles

AEB , BFC , CGD , DHA

are greater than half the segments

AEB , BFC , CGD , DHA respectively.

And therefore, if the triangles are removed, more than half of the portion of the circle outside the square will have been removed.

We have left, then, only the unshaded areas shown in the next figure.

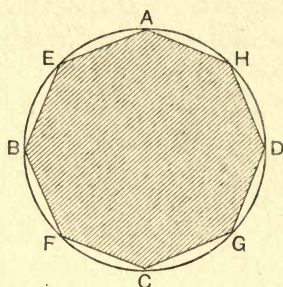


FIG. 11.

This process of bisecting the arcs and removing the triangular areas can be continued indefinitely.

At each step more than half the remaining area is removed, and therefore, if the process be carried on long enough, there will at length remain an area less than any area, say D , which may be fixed in advance.

Euclid XII. 1

ARTICLE 60

The areas of similar polygons inscribed in two circles are proportional to the areas of the squares described on the radii of the circles.

The areas of any two similar polygons are proportional to the squares described on corresponding sides.

If the similar polygons are inscribed in two circles, then corresponding sides are proportional to the radii of the circles, and therefore the squares on corresponding sides are proportional to the squares described on the radii of the circles.

Hence the areas of similar polygons inscribed in two circles are proportional to the areas of the squares described on the radii of the circles.

Euclid XII. 2

ARTICLE 61

The areas of circles are proportional to the squares described on their radii.

Let C_1 be the area of a circle whose radius is r_1 .

Let C_2 be the area of a circle whose radius is r_2 .

*If the ratio $(C_1 : C_2)$ be compared with any rational number $\frac{t}{u}$, then it is sufficient to consider the alternatives $(C_1 : C_2) > \frac{t}{u}$ and $(C_1 : C_2) < \frac{t}{u}$.

Suppose $(C_1 : C_2) > \frac{t}{u}$,

$$\therefore uC_1 > tC_2,$$

$$\therefore uC_1 - tC_2 = \text{some area } C.$$

Inside C_1 describe the polygon P_1 as explained in Art. 59,

$$\text{so that } C_1 - P_1 < \frac{C}{u},$$

$$\therefore uC_1 - uP_1 < C,$$

$$\text{but } uC_1 - tC_2 = C,$$

$$\therefore uC_1 - uP_1 < uC_1 - tC_2,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 < uP_1.$$

Inside C_2 describe a polygon P_2 similar to P_1 .

$$\text{Then } C_2 > P_2,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 > tP_2,$$

$$\text{but } uP_1 > tC_2,$$

$$\therefore uP_1 > tP_2,$$

$$\therefore (P_1 : P_2) > \frac{t}{u}.$$

* From this point onwards the argument is applicable to many other propositions than the one under consideration.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence if } (C_1 : C_2) &> \frac{t}{u}, \\ \text{then } (P_1 : P_2) &> \frac{t}{u}. \end{aligned}$$

Now let S_1 be the square described on r_1 ,
and S_2 be the square described on r_2 .

$$\text{Then } (P_1 : P_2) = (S_1 : S_2).$$

$$\text{But } (P_1 : P_2) > \frac{t}{u},$$

$$\therefore (S_1 : S_2) > \frac{t}{u}.$$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \text{Hence if } (C_1 : C_2) &> \frac{t}{u}, \\ \text{then } (S_1 : S_2) &> \frac{t}{u}. \end{aligned} \right\} \text{(I.)}$$

Suppose next

$$(C_1 : C_2) < \frac{t}{u},$$

$$\therefore uC_1 < tC_2,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 - uC_1 = \text{some area } D.$$

Inside C_2 inscribe a polygon Q_2 as explained in Art. 59,

$$\text{so that } C_2 - Q_2 < \frac{D}{t},$$

$$\therefore tC_2 - tQ_2 < D,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 - tQ_2 < tC_2 - uC_1,$$

$$\therefore tQ_2 > uC_1.$$

Inside C_1 inscribe a polygon Q_1 similar to Q_2 .

$$\text{Then } C_1 > Q_1,$$

$$\therefore uC_1 > uQ_1,$$

$$\therefore tQ_2 > uC_1 > uQ_1,$$

$$\therefore uQ_1 < tQ_2,$$

$$\therefore (Q_1 : Q_2) < \frac{t}{u}.$$

$$\text{But } (Q_1 : Q_2) = (S_1 : S_2).$$

$$\text{Hence } (S_1 : S_2) < \frac{t}{u}.$$

$$\left. \begin{aligned} \text{Hence if } (C_1 : C_2) &< \frac{t}{u}, \\ \text{then } (S_1 : S_2) &< \frac{t}{u}. \end{aligned} \right\} \text{(II.)}$$

It follows from (I.) and (II.) that no rational number falls between $(C_1 : C_2)$ and $(S_1 : S_2)$,

$$\therefore (C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2).$$

ARTICLE 61 (a)

This result has been arrived at by the aid of Stolz's Theorem (Art. 40), which is involved.

It is of interest to see how Mr. Rose-Innes completes the proof of the proposition on strictly Euclidean lines, without the aid of Stolz's Theorem.

It has been shown that

- if $uC_1 > tC_2$, then $uS_1 > tS_2$ (I.)
- and if $uC_1 < tC_2$, then $uS_1 < tS_2$ (II.)

From these results it follows that

$$\text{if } uS_1 = tS_2, \text{ then must } uC_1 = tC_2.$$

For if $uC_1 > tC_2$, then by (I.) $uS_1 > tS_2$, which is contrary to the hypothesis.

And if $uC_1 < tC_2$, then by (II.) $uS_1 < tS_2$, which is contrary to the hypothesis.

$$\text{Hence if } uS_1 = tS_2, \text{ then } uC_1 = tC_2. \text{ (III.)}$$

Suppose now that $uC_1 = tC_2$, construct a rectangle R with one side equal to t times the side of S_2 , and the other side equal to $\frac{1}{u}$ of the side of S_2 , and make a square S equal to the rectangle R .

$$\text{Then } uS = tS_2.$$

Let C be the area of the circle, whose radius is equal to the side of S .

Then from (III.) it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{since } uS = tS_2, \\ &\quad \therefore uC = tC_2. \\ &\text{But } uC_1 = tC_2, \\ &\quad \therefore uC = uC_1, \\ &\quad \therefore C = C_1. \end{aligned}$$

Hence the radii of these circles are equal,

$$\begin{aligned} &\quad \therefore S = S_1. \\ &\text{But } uS = tS_2, \\ &\quad \therefore uS_1 = tS_2. \end{aligned}$$

Hence it has now been shown that

$$\text{if } uC_1 = tC_2, \text{ then } uS_1 = tS_2 \text{ (IV.)}$$

Using (I.), (II.), and (IV.) and Euclid's Fifth Definition, it follows that

$$(C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2).$$

ARTICLE 61 (b)

There is still another way, due also to Mr. Rose-Innes, of obtaining the result.

Having proved the results marked (I.) and (II.) above, suppose next that

$$uS_1 > tS_2.$$

Let I_1, I_2 be the squares inscribed in the circles C_1, C_2 respectively.

$$\text{Then } I_1 = 2S_1, I_2 = 2S_2,$$

$$\therefore uI_1 > tI_2.$$

Now let us go on doubling the number of sides of the polygons inscribed in the circle C_2 until we reach a polygon P_2 such that

$$C_2 - P_2 < \frac{1}{t}(uI_1 - tI_2).$$

$$\text{Now } (I_1 : I_2) = (S_1 : S_2),$$

$$(P_1 : P_2) = (S_1 : S_2),$$

$$\therefore (I_1 : I_2) = (P_1 : P_2),$$

$$\therefore (uI_1 : tI_2) = (uP_1 : tP_2).$$

$$\text{Now } uI_1 > tI_2,$$

$$\therefore uP_1 > tP_2.$$

$$\text{Also } uI_1 - tI_2 : tI_2 = uP_1 - tP_2 : tP_2.$$

$$\text{But } tI_2 < tP_2,$$

$$\therefore uI_1 - tI_2 < uP_1 - tP_2,$$

$$\therefore C_2 - P_2 < \frac{1}{t}(uP_1 - tP_2),$$

$$\therefore tC_2 - tP_2 < uP_1 - tP_2,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 < uP_1.$$

$$\text{But } P_1 < C_1,$$

$$\therefore tC_2 < uC_1.$$

Hence if $uS_1 > tS_2$, then $uC_1 > tC_2$.

In a similar way it can be shown that

$$\text{if } uS_1 < tS_2, \text{ then } uC_1 < tC_2.$$

We have now the four results :

- if $uC_1 > tC_2$, then $uS_1 > tS_2$; (i.)
- if $uC_1 < tC_2$, then $uS_1 < tS_2$; (ii.)
- if $uS_1 > tS_2$, then $uC_1 > tC_2$; (iii.)
- if $uS_1 < tS_2$, then $uC_1 < tC_2$; (iv.)

Suppose now that $uC_1 = tC_2$, then if we compare uS_1 with tS_2 the logical alternatives are

$$uS_1 > tS_2 \text{ or } uS_1 < tS_2 \text{ or } uS_1 = tS_2.$$

But if $uS_1 > tS_2$, then $uC_1 > tC_2$ by (iii.), which is contrary to the hypothesis that $uC_1 = tC_2$.

And if $uS_1 < tS_2$, then $uC_1 < tC_2$ by (iv.), which is contrary to the hypothesis that $uC_1 = tC_2$.

Hence if $uC_1 = tC_2$, we must have $uS_1 = tS_2$ (v.).

From (i.), (ii.), and (v.) it follows that

$$(C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2).$$

[In the *first* edition of my Euclid, p. 18, Art. 37, I employed the four sets of conditions (i.), (ii.), (iii.), and (iv.), and did not use Stolz's Theorem in the form in which he himself gave it, which will be found in the *second* edition of my Euclid, V and VI, p. 29, and has been given above (Art. 40.)]

ARTICLE 62

If we now go over the steps of the proposition proved in Art. 61 and try to distinguish what is incidental to the particular proposition from what is necessary to obtain the final result, we get the following :

Let C_1, C_2 represent the contents of any two lengths, or of any two areas, or of any two volumes of such a nature that it is possible to inscribe in the first an infinite series of figures, which may be denoted by P_1 , and in the second a series of related figures P_2 (not necessarily similar to P_1), but such that the ratio of the contents of two related figures ($P_1 : P_2$) always has a FIXED value, say ($S_1 : S_2$), and if further by increasing the number of sides of P_1 it is possible to make the difference between C_1 and P_1 as small as we please, and if in like manner it is possible to make the difference between C_2 and P_2 as small as we please, then will $(C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2)$, for the argument of Art. 61 from the point specially noted therein applies.

ARTICLE 63

As a first illustration I will prove that *the lengths of the circumferences of circles are proportional to their radii.*

Without going too deeply into the matter, let us assume that the length of the circumference is the limit to which the length of the perimeter of an inscribed regular polygon of 2^n sides approaches as n tends to infinity.

Now let C_1, C_2 denote the lengths of the circumferences of two circles whose radii are r_1, r_2 .

Inscribe in each circle a regular polygon of 2^n sides.

The two inscribed polygons are similar.

Let their perimeters be P_1, P_2 .

Then $(P_1 : P_2) = (r_1 : r_2)$ and is therefore fixed.

Hence the fixed ratio $(S_1 : S_2)$ of Art. 62 is in this case $= (r_1 : r_2)$.

Now by the assumption we have made as to the meaning of the length of the circumference of a circle, we know that $C_1 - P_1$ and $C_2 - P_2$ can be made as small as we please by increasing n sufficiently.

\therefore the argument of Arts. 61, 62 applies,

$\therefore (C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2)$, which is here $(r_1 : r_2)$,

$\therefore (C_1 : C_2) = (r_1 : r_2)$.

Hence the circumferences of circles are proportional to their radii.

ARTICLE 64

As a second illustration it will be shown that *the area of the radian sector of a circle is equal to half the area of the square described on its radius.*

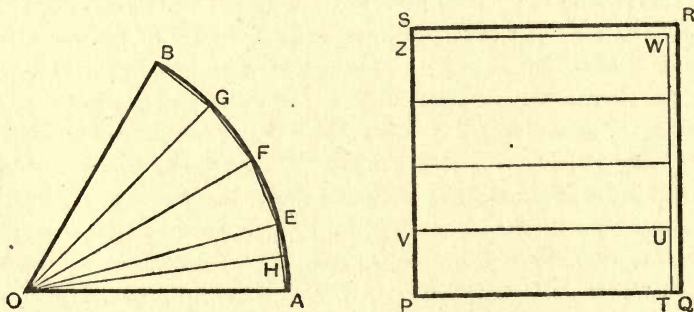


FIG. 12.

Let AB be an arc of a circle whose centre is O , such that the length of the arc AB is equal to the radius OA , it is required to prove that the area of the sector OAB is equal to half the area of the square described on OA as side.

I will call the sector OAB the radian sector.

When we say that the length of the arc AB is equal to the radius we may agree to mean that if we divide the arc into 2^n equal parts, and join the points of division by straight lines, then the sum of the lengths of the joining lines increases as n increases up to a limit which is equal to the length of the radius.

In the figure the arc AB is divided into equal parts AE , EF , FG , GB .

OH is drawn perpendicular to AE .

$PQRS$ is a square on $PQ=OA$.

In it we take $PT=OH$,

$$PV=AE,$$

$$PZ=AE+EF+FG+GB.$$

Then the rectangle $PTUV$ is double the triangle OAE , and the rectangle $PTWZ$ is double the figure $OAEFGB$ inscribed in the radian sector.

Moreover, by increasing the number of points of division of the arc AB the difference between the radian sector and the figure $OAEFGB$ can be made as small as we please. When this is done OH and $\therefore PT$ tends to the radius as its limiting value, and \therefore the point T tends to Q .

Also $AE+EF+FG+GB$ tends to the radius as its limiting value, and $\therefore PZ$ tends to PS , and $\therefore Z$ to S .

Hence the rectangle $PTWZ$ tends to coincide with $PQRS$, and can be made to differ from it by as little as we please.

In this case the argument of Arts. 61, 62 applies if we make C_1 the area of the radian sector, C_2 the area of the square described on the radius, P_1 the figures represented by $OAEFGB$, and P_2 the figures represented by $PTWZ$.

And here the fixed ratio ($S_1 : S_2$) is now the ratio (1 : 2).

Hence (the area of the radian sector : the area of the square on the radius) = (1 : 2).

$$\therefore \text{area of radian sector} = \frac{1}{2}(\text{the square on the radius}).$$

ARTICLE 65

The area of a circle whose radius is r is πr^2 .

Let us now compare the area of the whole circle with that of the radian sector.

Since the areas of sectors of the same circle are proportional to their arcs,

$$\therefore (\text{area of whole circle} : \text{area of radian sector})$$

$$= (\text{length of circumference} : \text{length of radius}),$$

$$\therefore (\text{area of whole circle} : \frac{1}{2}r^2) = (2\pi r : r),$$

$$\therefore \text{area of whole circle} = \pi r^2.$$

ARTICLE 66

As a third illustration it will be proved that *the volumes of tetrahedra standing on the same base are proportional to their altitudes.*

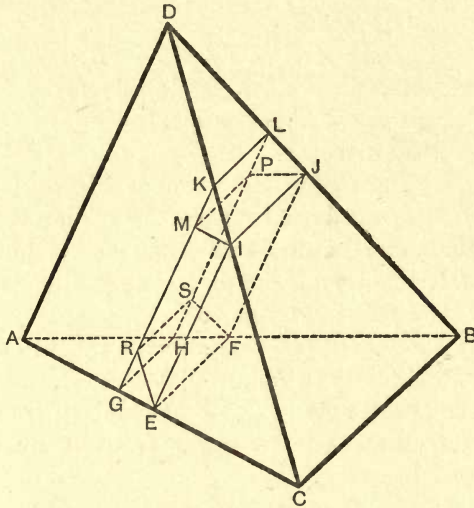


FIG. 13.

Only one tetrahedron $ABCD$ is drawn in the figure.

Let the side AC be divided into n equal parts.

Let E, G be two consecutive points of division.

Draw EF, GH parallel to BC .

„ EI, GK „ AD .

„ FJ, HL „ AD .

Then it can be shown that

KL, IJ are parallel to CB .

Also if IM be drawn parallel to CA ,
and JP be drawn parallel to BA ,

then the figure standing on $EFHG$ as base, and having the equal and parallel edges EI, FJ, HP, GM is a prism whose volume is

base $EFHG \times$ perpendicular from I on the plane ABC .

If, through all the points of division of AC , parallels be drawn to BC such as EF, GH , and if on each of the areas such as $EFHG$ there be erected a prism corresponding to the one just described, then the aggregate of all these prisms will be a polyhedron inscribed in $ABCD$, which, using the notation of Art. 62, may be called P_1 . The volume of the tetrahedron $ABCD$ may, with the notation of Art. 62, be denoted by C_1 .

The volume of P_1 differs from that of C_1 by the sum of the pieces such as $MIJPLK$, which is a frustum of the prism whose parallel edges IJ, MP, KL are cut by the non-parallel planes IMK, JPL .

$$\text{Now } MI = GE = \frac{1}{n}(AC).$$

$$\text{Also } (KM : MI) = (DA : AC),$$

$$\therefore KM = \frac{1}{n}(DA).$$

Also $MIJP$ is congruent with $GEFH$.

Hence if the piece $MIJPLK$ be detached from its position, and made to slide until $MIJP$ falls upon $GEFH$, K will fall at a point R , such that $GR = \frac{1}{n}(DA)$, and L will fall at a point S such that $HS = \frac{1}{n}(DA)$. $MIJPLK$ will coincide with $GEFHRS$.

If all the pieces like $MIJPLK$ are treated in the same way, their bases will together cover up the base ABC and the lines such as RS will all fall on a plane parallel to ABC , cutting AD at a distance from $A = \frac{1}{n}(AD)$.

Their total volume will therefore be less than that of a prism whose base is ABC and whose height is $\frac{1}{n}$ of the perpendicular from D on ABC .

Hence their total volume is less than

$$\frac{1}{n}(\text{base } ABC) (\text{perpendicular from } D \text{ on } ABC).$$

Hence by increasing n the difference between the volume of the tetrahedron and the aggregate of the prisms such as $EFHGM IJP$ can be made as small as we please.

Call the figure inscribed in the second tetrahedron, which corresponds to P_1 in the first, P_2 .

It will be proved that

$$(P_1 : P_2) = (h_1 : h_2),$$

where h_1, h_2 are the heights of the tetrahedrons.

Suppose that accented letters denote the points in the second tetrahedron which correspond to unaccented letters in the first.

The ratio of the volumes of corresponding prisms,

$$\text{i.e. } (EFHGM IJP : E'F'H'G'M'I'J'P')$$

$$= (EFHG \times \text{perp. from } I \text{ on } ABC) : (E'F'H'G' \times \text{perp. from } I' \text{ on } A'B'C')$$

$= (\text{perp. from } I \text{ on } ABC) : (\text{perp. from } I' \text{ on } A'B'C')$,
because the bases ABC and $A'B'C'$ are the same, and so $EFHG$ and $E'F'H'G'$ coincide.

Further

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{perp. from } I \text{ on } ABC) : (\text{perp. from } D \text{ on } ABC) \\ & = (IC : DC) = (EC : AC). \end{aligned}$$

Also

$$\begin{aligned} & (\text{perp. from } I' \text{ on } A'B'C') : (\text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C') \\ & = (I'C' : D'C') = (E'C' : A'C') = (EC : AC) \end{aligned}$$

because the bases $A'B'C', ABC$ are the same; and the points A, E, C coincide with A', E', C' respectively.

$$\begin{aligned} & \therefore (\text{perp. from } I \text{ on } ABC) : (\text{perp. from } D \text{ on } ABC) \\ & = (\text{perp. from } I' \text{ on } A'B'C') : (\text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C'), \\ & \therefore (\text{perp. from } I \text{ on } ABC) : (\text{perp. from } I' \text{ on } A'B'C') \\ & = (\text{perp. from } D \text{ on } ABC) : (\text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C') \\ & = (h_1 : h_2), \\ & \therefore (EFHGM IJP : E'F'H'G'M'I'J'P') = (h_1 : h_2), \end{aligned}$$

i.e. the ratio of the volumes of corresponding prisms $= (h_1 : h_2)$.

Hence by the aid of Prop. XIV. it can be shown that $(P_1 : P_2) = (h_1 : h_2)$.

We are now in a position to apply the argument of Arts. 61, 62.

Here C_1, C_2 are the volumes of the two tetrahedra. P_1, P_2 are the volumes of the inscribed polyhedra made up of the prisms such as $EFHGM IJP$ and $E'F'H'G'M'I'J'P'$.

Both $C_1 - P_1$ and $C_2 - P_2$ can be made as small as we please by sufficiently increasing n .

Also $(P_1 : P_2)$ has the fixed value $(h_1 : h_2)$.

So here the $(S_1 : S_2)$ of Art. 62 is $(h_1 : h_2)$.

Hence $(C_1 : C_2) = (S_1 : S_2)$, which is $(h_1 : h_2)$.

$$\therefore (C_1 : C_2) = (h_1 : h_2).$$

ARTICLE 67

The volumes of tetrahedra are proportional to their bases and altitudes jointly.

It has been proved (Art. 66) that the volumes of any two tetrahedra standing on *identical* bases are proportional to their altitudes.

The next step is to show how to take account of an alteration in the bases of the tetrahedra.

Let $DABC$ and $D'A'B'C'$ be any two tetrahedra.

On AB take a length $AK = A'B'$.

In the plane ABC make $K\hat{A}L = B'\hat{A}'C'$,

and take $AL = A'C'$.

Join KL . Let AC meet KL at R . Join DR, CK .

Then the triangles $AKL, A'B'C'$ are congruent, and it is possible to move the tetrahedron $D'A'B'C'$ until its base $A'B'C'$ coincides with the triangle AKL .

Then by what has been shown as to the ratio of the volumes of tetrahedra standing on the same base,

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{vol. of } DAKL : \text{vol. of } D'A'B'C' \\ & = \text{perp. from } D \text{ on } AKL : \text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C' \\ & = \text{perp. from } D \text{ on } ABC : \text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C'. \end{aligned}$$

The next step is to find the ratio of the volumes of

the tetrahedra $DABC$, $DAKL$. This is obtained by comparing

- (1) $DABC$ with $DACK$,
- then (2) $DACK$ with $DARK$,
- and then (3) $DARK$ with $DAKL$.

If $DABC$ be compared with $DACK$, they may be regarded as standing on the same base DAC , and their heights are then the perpendiculars from B and K on the plane DAC .

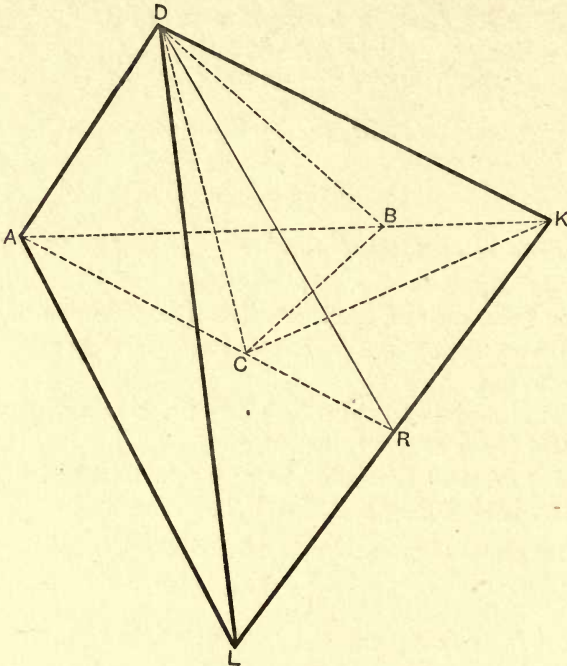


FIG. 14.

Now these heights are proportional to AB and AK .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DABC : DACK &= AB : AK = \triangle ABC : \triangle AKC, \\ \therefore DABC : DACK &= \triangle ABC : \triangle AKC \dots\dots\dots(1). \end{aligned}$$

Next compare $DACK$ with $DARK$.

They may be considered as standing on the base DAK , and their heights to be the perpendiculars from C and R on the plane DAK . These heights are proportional to AC and AR .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DACK : DARK &= AC : AR = \triangle ACK : \triangle ARK, \\ \therefore DACK : DARK &= \triangle AKC : \triangle ARK \dots \dots \dots (2). \end{aligned}$$

Lastly, consider the tetrahedra *DARK*, *DAKL*.

They may be considered as standing on the base *DAK*, and their heights are the perpendiculars from *R* and *L* on the plane *DAK*.

These heights are proportional to *KR* and *KL*.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DARK : DAKL &= KR : KL = \triangle ARK : \triangle ALK, \\ \therefore DARK : DAKL &= \triangle ARK : \triangle A'B'C' \dots \dots \dots (3). \end{aligned}$$

From (1) and (2) by Prop. XIX. it follows that

$$DABC : DARK = \triangle ABC : \triangle ARK \dots \dots \dots (4).$$

From (4) and (3) by Prop. XIX. it follows that

$$DABC : DAKL = \triangle ABC : \triangle A'B'C' \dots \dots \dots (5).$$

Now since the bases *AKL* and *A'B'C'* are identical,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore DAKL : D'A'B'C' \\ &= \text{perp. from } D \text{ on } AKL : \text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C', \\ \therefore DAKL : D'A'B'C' \\ &= \text{perp. from } D \text{ on } ABC : \text{perp. from } D' \text{ on } A'B'C' \dots (6). \end{aligned}$$

From (5) and (6) together it follows that the volumes of tetrahedra are proportional to their bases and altitudes jointly.

If now *DABC* and *D'A'B'C'* be two tetrahedra on equal bases and having equal altitudes, it follows from (5) and (6) that

$$DABC = D'A'B'C'.$$

From this it follows in the well-known way that the volume of a tetrahedron is equal to one-third of the base multiplied by the height.

CHAPTER XI

ARTICLES 68-70 .

*Further remarks on the Irrational Number.
The existence of the Fourth Proportional.*

ARTICLE 68

BEFORE proceeding to discuss the existence of the Fourth Proportional, it is necessary to say a little more about the Irrational Number. The subject is dealt with more fully in the Note on Irrational Numbers appended to the Second Edition of my book on the Contents of the Fifth and Sixth Books of Euclid's *Elements*, pp. 147-162.

The Irrational Number

Let some rule be given by means of which the system of all the rational numbers can be separated into two classes such that every number in one class (called the lower class) is less than every number in the other class (called the upper class); then the following cases have to be distinguished.

(i.) The lower class has no greatest number, and the upper class has no least number. Then between the two classes there is a gap. This gap is filled by the creation of a number. It cannot be a *rational* number, because every *rational* number falls by hypothesis into one of the two classes. Consequently it is called an *irrational* number; and it separates the whole system of *rational* numbers into two classes, such that every number of the lower class is less than every number of the upper class.

It is regarded as known because all its properties can be inferred from a knowledge of all the rational numbers which are less than it, and a knowledge of all the rational numbers which are greater than it.

(ii.) The case in which the lower class contains a greatest number. This greatest number is a rational number, because it belongs to the lower class. Calling it $\frac{r}{s}$, the upper class contains all the rational numbers greater than $\frac{r}{s}$, and therefore can contain no least number.

In this case the number $\frac{r}{s}$ separates the whole system of rational numbers into two classes such that each number in the lower class is less than each number in the upper class.

The lower class contains $\frac{r}{s}$ and all rational numbers less than $\frac{r}{s}$; the upper class contains all the rational numbers greater than $\frac{r}{s}$.

(iii.) The case in which the upper class contains a least number.

This least number is a rational number because it belongs to the upper class. Calling it $\frac{r}{s}$, the lower class contains all the numbers less than $\frac{r}{s}$ and therefore can contain no greatest number.

In this case the number $\frac{r}{s}$ separates the whole system of rational numbers into two classes such that each number in the lower class is less than each number in the upper class.

The upper class contains $\frac{r}{s}$ and all numbers greater than $\frac{r}{s}$; the lower class contains all the numbers less than $\frac{r}{s}$.

Cases (ii.) and (iii.) are regarded as not essentially distinct. In both the separation of the whole system of rational numbers into two classes can be regarded as being effected by the number $\frac{r}{s}$. In any of the cases (i.), (ii.), (iii.) the separation of the system of all the rational numbers into two classes is such that every number in the lower class is less than every number in the upper class.

ARTICLE 69

The following is a geometrical analogy to the preceding.

If P be a point in any straight line, then all the points in the straight line may be separated into two classes P_1, P_2 as follows :

The first-class P_1 contains all the points that lie on one side, say the left, of P .

The second class P_2 contains all the points that lie on the right of P .

The point P itself may be put into either class, it does not matter which.

If P be put into the class P_1 , then the class P_1 has a point, viz. P , which is the farthest to the right, but the class P_2 has no point which is farthest to the left.

If P be put into the class P_2 , then the class P_2 has a point, viz. P , which is the farthest to the left, but the class P_1 has no point which is farthest to the right.

In either case the separation of all the points on the straight line into the two classes P_1, P_2 is of such a nature that every point of the first class P_1 is on the left of every point of the second class P_2 .

The converse of the above statement cannot be proved. The assumption of its truth is known as the Cantor-Dedekind Axiom. It explains what is meant by ascribing continuity to the straight line.

The Cantor-Dedekind Axiom

If all points of the straight line fall into two classes such that every point of the first class lies to the left of every point of the second class, then there exists one and only one point which produces this separation of all points of the straight line into two classes.

Now it has been seen that the system of rational numbers can be separated into two classes, such that every number in the lower class is less than every number of the upper class, and that this separation can be produced by a number which is not a rational number. From this it follows that the system of rational numbers is not continuous.

The existence of the Fourth Proportional

ARTICLE 70

I come now to a very important proposition, which is far too difficult to be included in an elementary course, except in the special case in which the magnitudes concerned are segments of straight lines or cases readily reducible thereto.

EXISTENCE OF THE FOURTH PROPORTIONAL 77

Euclid assumed it in V. 18, and XII. 2, 5, 11, 12, and 18. The proposition, as will be seen, rests for its validity on an axiom corresponding to the Cantor-Dedekind Axiom. It is fundamental in the Theory of Ratio. It is as follows :

Prop. XXIV. If A and B be magnitudes of the same kind, and if C be any third magnitude, then there exists a fourth magnitude Z of the same kind as C such that

$$(A : B) = (C : Z).$$

Now if $(A : B) = (C : Z)$,

$$\text{then } (Z : C) = (B : A).$$

(1) Suppose that A and B have a common measure, and

\therefore integers r, s exist such that $(B : A) = \frac{r}{s}$.

$$\text{Then } Z = \frac{rC}{s}.$$

$$\text{For } \frac{rC}{s} : C = (rC : sC) = \frac{r}{s} = (B : A).$$

(2) Suppose B and A have no common measure.

Let $B : A$ be equal to the irrational number ρ .

Let p_1, p_1', p_1'', \dots represent rational numbers in the lower class determined by ρ in ascending order of magnitude. These contain no greatest number.

Let p_2, p_2', p_2'', \dots represent rational numbers in the upper class determined by ρ in descending order of magnitude. These contain no least number.

Now if p_1 represent any rational number $\frac{u}{v}$, p_1C denotes $\frac{u}{v}C$, i.e. $\frac{uC}{v}$, which means the v th part of the magnitude uC , so that the magnitude p_1C can be constructed.

Construct the magnitudes $p_1C, p_1'C, p_1''C, \dots$, and call them magnitudes of the form p_1C .

Construct the magnitudes $p_2C, p_2'C, p_2''C, \dots$, and call them magnitudes of the form p_2C .

Then $p_1C < p_1'C < p_1''C < \dots < p_2''C < p_2'C < p_2C$.

Let us separate all the magnitudes of the same kind as C into two classes by the following rules :

(i.) Put all those into the upper class which are greater than every one of the magnitudes of the form p_1C .

Call any one of these a magnitude Y .

(ii.) Into the lower class put all those magnitudes which are not greater than every one of the magnitudes of the form p_1C .

Call any one of these magnitudes a magnitude X .

It will be proved in the *first* place that

Every magnitude Y is greater than every magnitude X .

From the definition of the magnitudes X , it appears that any X , say X_1 , does not exceed every magnitude of the form p_1C .

Suppose $X_1 \leq p_1'C$.

But every Y exceeds every magnitude of the form p_1C .

$$\therefore Y > p_1'C,$$

$$\therefore Y > X_1,$$

\therefore every Y exceeds every X .

It will be proved in the *second* place that

The set of magnitudes X includes no greatest magnitude.

The characteristic of the magnitudes X is that they are not greater than every magnitude of the form p_1C .

Suppose X' is one of the magnitudes X .

Let $X' \leq p_1'C$.

Now there is no greatest p_1 .

Suppose $p_1' < p_1''$,

$$\therefore p_1'C < p_1''C.$$

It is then permissible to take $X'' = p_1''C$,

$$\therefore X' < X'',$$

and so on ; other magnitudes X can be found continually increasing in order of magnitude.

Therefore the set of magnitudes X includes no greatest magnitude.

It will be proved in the *third* place that on the assumption of the truth of the axiom referred to above

The set of magnitudes Y includes a least magnitude.

Now the magnitudes X and Y together include all the magnitudes of the same kind as C . In regard to these magnitudes we assume an axiom corresponding to the Cantor-Dedekind Axiom for the straight line, as follows :

If all the magnitudes of the same kind as C be separated into two classes such that every magnitude of the one class is less than every magnitude of the other class, then there is one and only one magnitude of the same kind as C which produces this separation, and it is either the greatest magnitude of the one class, or the least magnitude of the other class.

Now it has been proved that the magnitudes X include no greatest magnitude.

Therefore the magnitudes Y include a least magnitude.

Call this least magnitude Z .

It will be proved in the *fourth* place

$$\text{That } (Z : C) > \text{every } p_1.$$

Since Z is a magnitude Y , it is greater than every magnitude of the form p_1C . Write this thus :

$$\begin{aligned} Z &> \text{every } p_1C, \\ \therefore (Z : C) &> \text{every } p_1. \end{aligned}$$

It will be proved in the *fifth* place

$$\begin{aligned} \text{That } (Z : C) &< \text{every } p_2, \\ \text{i.e. } Z &< \text{every } p_2C. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Suppose if possible } Z &\geq \text{some } p_2C, \\ \text{say } Z &\geq p_2''C. \end{aligned}$$

Then since the rational numbers p_2 include no least rational number, take

$$\begin{aligned} &\cdot p_2''' < p_2'', \\ \text{Then } p_2'''C &< p_2''C, \\ \therefore p_2'''C &< Z. \end{aligned}$$

Now every $p_2 > \text{every } p_1$,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore p_2''' &> \text{every } p_1, \\ \therefore p_2'''C &> \text{every } p_1C, \\ \therefore p_2'''C &\text{ is a magnitude } Y. \end{aligned}$$

But $p_2'''C < Z$.

Hence there is a magnitude Y which is less than Z .

But this is contrary to the definition of Z , viz. that it was the least of the magnitudes Y .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } Z &< \text{every } p_2C, \\ \therefore (Z : C) &< \text{every } p_2. \end{aligned}$$

It has now been proved both that

$$(Z : C) > \text{every } p_1,$$

$$\text{and } (Z : C) < \text{every } p_2.$$

Hence $Z : C$ determines the same separation of the whole system of rational numbers as the irrational number ρ , i.e. the same separation as $B : A$,

$$\therefore (Z : C) = (B : A),$$

$$\therefore (A : B) = (C : Z).$$

PART III

CHAPTER XII

ARTICLES 71-100

Commentary on the Fifth Book of Euclid's Elements.

I. DEFINITIONS

ARTICLE 71

THE most important definitions are the 3rd, the 4th, the 5th, and the 7th.

(a) The *third* definition is translated thus by De Morgan in his Treatise on the Connexion of Number and Magnitude.

“Ratio is a certain mutual habitude* of two magnitudes of the same kind depending upon their quantuplicity.”†

He says (*l.c.*, p. 63, line 4): “Ratio is relative magnitude.”

If we say that the ratio of *A* to *B* is the measure of the relative magnitude of *A* as compared with *B*, I think that this will give us all that can be extracted from Euclid's third definition.

(b) The *fourth* definition is translated thus by De Morgan :

“Magnitudes are said to have a ratio to each other which can, being multiplied, exceed ‘one the other.’”

I have given De Morgan's translation above. It is sometimes rendered, “Two magnitudes are said to have a ratio when the less can be multiplied so as to exceed the greater.”

But De Morgan contends that this does not represent the meaning of the Greek original.

Whichever form be accepted, the Axiom of Archimedes is

* *σχέσις*, method of holding or having, mode or kind of existence.

† *πηλικότης*, for which there is no English word; it means relative greatness, and is the substantive which refers to the number of times or parts of times one is in the other.

assumed, viz. : If A and B are two magnitudes of the same kind, it is always possible to find a multiple of the less which will exceed the greater.

The third and fourth definitions may be regarded as doing two things :

In the first place they call attention to important properties of two magnitudes of the same kind.

In the second place, the fourth definition taken together with the third says that if A and B are two magnitudes of the same kind, then they also determine something else which Euclid calls a ratio, and which we regard as a number. It is denoted by $A : B$ or $B : A$, according to the order in which the magnitudes are taken.

The definition does not say what a ratio is, or how it is to be determined, and this omission is one of the great difficulties which present themselves to those who try to understand the argument.

The Fifth Definition

(The test for determining if two ratios are equal.)

ARTICLE 72

If A, B, C, D are four magnitudes, then A has the same ratio to B as C has to D , if when any integers whatever, r, s have been chosen, the following sets of conditions are satisfied :

- (1) If the integers r, s are such that $rA > sB$, it is necessary that $rC > sD$.
- (2) If the integers r, s are such that $rA = sB$, it is necessary that $rC = sD$.
- (3) If the integers r, s are such that $rA < sB$, it is necessary that $rC < sD$.

ARTICLE 73

The first thing to observe about this definition is that it is not necessary to bring in the idea of ratio at all. It merely states that the four quantities A, B, C, D are such that the multiples of A are distributed amongst the multiples of B in the same way as the multiples of C are distributed amongst the multiples of D .

For suppose that pA lies between qB and $(q+1)B$,

then $pA > qB$,

$\therefore pC > qD$.

Also $pA < (q+1)B$,

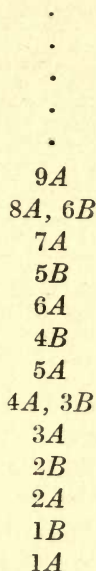
$\therefore pC < (q+1)D$.

Hence pC lies between qD and $(q+1)D$.

If, however, $pA = tB$, then $pC = tD$.

To fix the ideas take a particular example. Let A represent a straight line 3 inches long, and let B represent a straight line 4 inches long.

Then if we arrange the multiples of A and B in ascending order of magnitude we get the following diagram :



which, of course, may be continued indefinitely upwards.

This was what De Morgan called the relative multiple scale of A, B .

Its properties may be seen more clearly by placing A and B at the bottom of the column, and arranging the digits above them in accordance with the following rules :

If $rA > sB$, then r above A is to be placed higher than s above B .

If $rA = sB$, then r above A is to be placed on the same level as s above B .

If $rA < sB$, then r above A is to be placed lower than s above B .

If we do this in the above case we get the following diagram ; for the relative multiple scale of 3 inches and 4 inches :

9	
8	6
7	
	5
6	
	4
5	
4	3
3	
	2
2	
	1
1	
A=3	B=4

FIG. 15.

If we call the part of the diagram, above the line on which A and B are written, supposed continued indefinitely upwards, the relative multiple scale of A, B ; then the conditions set out in Euclid's Fifth Definition simply amount to the statement that the ratio of A to B is the same as that of C to D when the relative multiple scale of A, B is the same as that of C, D .

Now all the propositions in the Fifth Book which deal with equal ratios can be expressed as propositions dealing with the sameness of relative multiple scales.

For example, instead of saying that the ratio of A to B is the same as that of nA to nB , we might say that the relative multiple scale of A, B is the same as the relative multiple scale of nA, nB ; or if we do not use the technical term "relative

multiple scale" we might say that the multiples of A are distributed amongst the multiples of B in the same way as the multiples of nA are distributed amongst the multiples of nB .

In this way the introduction of the idea of ratio might be avoided, and the difficulty arising from the fact that Euclid does not define ratio would not then force itself on any one trying to understand his argument.

It is true that when one passes on to consider unequal ratios the difficulty of avoiding the use of the term "ratio" becomes greater.

On the other hand, as has been explained in the preceding chapters, all the properties of Equal Ratios proved in the Fifth Book can be proved without using the Seventh Definition.

ARTICLE 74

Let us now make some further study of the three sets of conditions which appear in the Fifth Definition.

It will be proved in the *first* place that if the sets of conditions marked (1), (2), and (3) in Art. 72 in the Fifth Definition hold good, then conversely,

- (4) if $rC > sD$, it will follow that $rA > sB$;
- (5) if $rC = sD$, it will follow that $rA = sB$;
- (6) if $rC < sD$, it will follow that $rA < sB$.

Suppose if possible that (1), (2), and (3) hold, but that when $r=r_1$, $s=s_1$ we have

$r_1C > s_1D$, but r_1A not greater than s_1B ;
so that either (i.) $r_1C > s_1D$ and $r_1A = s_1B$,
or (ii.) $r_1C > s_1D$ and $r_1A < s_1B$.

(i.) If $r_1C > s_1D$ and $r_1A = s_1B$,

then since $r_1A = s_1B$, it follows by (2) that $r_1C = s_1D$, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $r_1C > s_1D$.

Hence r_1A is not equal to s_1B .

(ii.) If next $r_1C > s_1D$ and $r_1A < s_1B$,

then since $r_1A < s_1B$, it follows by (3) that $r_1C < s_1D$, which is contrary to the hypothesis that $r_1C > s_1D$.

Hence r_1A is not less than s_1B .

Hence if $r_1C > s_1D$, then is $r_1A > s_1B$.

Hence (4) holds.

In like manner it can be shown that (5) and (6) hold.

ARTICLE 75

In the *second* place it may be observed that it has already been shown in the discussion of Stolz's Theorem, Prop. XI., Art. 40, that if (1) and (3) hold, then (2) must hold.

Similarly if (4) and (6) hold, then (5) must hold.

ARTICLE 76

It will be proved in the *third* place that it is sufficient for (1) and (4) to hold.

Suppose that all values of r, s which make

$$rA > sB \text{ also make } rC > sD, \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

and that all values of r, s which make

$$rC > sD \text{ also make } rA > sB, \dots \dots \dots (4)$$

it will be shown that (3) holds.

Suppose then that

$$r_1A < s_1B,$$

and it is required to prove that $r_1C < s_1D$.

If not, then either (i.) $r_1C > s_1D$ or (ii.) $r_1C = s_1D$.

(i.) Consider first the alternative

$$r_1A < s_1B, \text{ but } r_1C > s_1D.$$

This is impossible, for by (4),

$$\begin{aligned} &\text{if } r_1C > s_1D, \\ &\text{then } r_1A > s_1B, \end{aligned}$$

which is contrary to the hypothesis that

$$r_1A < s_1B.$$

Hence r_1C is not greater than s_1D .

(ii.) Consider next the alternative

$$r_1A < s_1B, \text{ but } r_1C = s_1D.$$

Then by Archimedes' Axiom an integer n exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} n(s_1B - r_1A) &> A, \\ \therefore (nr_1 + 1)A &< ns_1B, \\ &\text{but } nr_1C = ns_1D, \\ \therefore (nr_1 + 1)C &> ns_1D, \end{aligned}$$

i.e. $(nr_1 + 1)C > (ns_1)D$, but $(nr_1 + 1)A < (ns_1)B$,
but by (4),

$$\begin{aligned} \text{putting } r &= nr_1 + 1, \\ s &= ns_1, \end{aligned}$$

it is necessary, when $(nr_1 + 1)C > (ns_1)D$, that

$$\begin{aligned} (nr_1 + 1)A &> ns_1B, \\ \text{and not } (nr_1 + 1)A &< ns_1B. \end{aligned}$$

Hence r_1C is not equal to s_1D .

Consequently it is necessary that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{when } r_1A &< s_1B, \\ \text{then } r_1C &< s_1D. \end{aligned}$$

Hence (3) holds.

But when (1) and (3) hold, then by Stolz's Theorem

$$(A : B) = (C : D).$$

Hence (1) and (4) are sufficient.

Similarly (3) and (6) are sufficient.

ARTICLE 77

Suppose in the *fourth* place that (2) holds good for a *single* value of r , say r_1 , and a *single* value of s , say s_1 ,

$$\text{i.e. } r_1A = s_1B, \quad r_1C = s_1D.$$

Now suppose that for any pair of values of r , s , say $r = r_2, s = s_2$,

$$\begin{aligned} r_2A &> s_2B, \\ \text{to prove that } r_2C &> s_2D, \\ \therefore r_1A &= s_1B, \\ \therefore r_1s_2A &= s_1s_2B, \\ \therefore r_2A &> s_2B, \\ \therefore s_1r_2A &> s_1s_2B, \\ \therefore s_1r_2A &> r_1s_2A, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore s_1 r_2 &> r_1 s_2, \\ \therefore s_1 r_2 C &> r_1 s_2 C, \\ \therefore s_1 r_2 C &> s_2 (r_1 C), \\ \therefore s_1 r_2 C &> s_2 s_1 D, \\ \therefore r_2 C &> s_2 D. \end{aligned}$$

Similarly it can be proved that if

$$\begin{aligned} r_3 A &< s_3 B, \\ \text{then } r_3 C &< s_3 D. \end{aligned}$$

So that if (2) hold for a *single* value of r and a *single value* of s , then (1) or (3) will hold for *any* values of r, s whatever. The like conclusion follows in regard to (5).

The Seventh Definition

ARTICLE 78

The *seventh* definition is the test for distinguishing the greater of two *Unequal Ratios* from the smaller.

The ratio of A to B is greater than that of C to D if a single pair of integers r, s can be found such that

$$\text{if } rA > sB, \text{ then either } rC = sD \text{ or } rC < sD.$$

$$\text{Hence } (A : B) > (C : D)$$

if a single pair of integers r, s exist such that either

$$rA > sB, \text{ but } rC < sD, \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

$$\text{or } rA > sB, \text{ but } rC = sD. \dots\dots\dots(2)$$

With these might have been included also the possibility that

$$rA = sB, \text{ but } rC < sD. \dots\dots\dots(3)$$

It will now be shown that in the cases (2) and (3) other integers r', s' exist such that

$$r'A > s'B, \text{ but } r'C < s'D,$$

which is of the form (1).

Suppose that when $r=r_1, s=s_1$, the form (2) holds.

$$\therefore r_1 A > s_1 B, \text{ but } r_1 C = s_1 D.$$

By Archimedes' Axiom an integer n exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} n(r_1A - s_1B) &> B, \\ \therefore nr_1A &> (ns_1 + 1)B. \\ \text{Since } r_1C &= s_1D, \\ \therefore nr_1C &= ns_1D, \\ \therefore nr_1C &< (ns_1 + 1)D. \end{aligned}$$

Hence putting $nr_1 = r'$, $ns_1 + 1 = s'$ it follows that integers r' , s' exist such that

$$r'A > s'B, \text{ but } r'C < s'D,$$

which is of the form (1).

ARTICLE 79

Suppose next that when $r = r_2$, $s = s_2$ the form (3) holds.

$$\therefore r_2A = s_2B, \text{ but } r_2C < s_2D.$$

Then by Archimedes' Axiom an integer n exists such that

$$\begin{aligned} n(s_2D - r_2C) &> C, \\ \therefore (nr_2 + 1)C &< ns_2D, \\ \text{but } r_2A &= s_2B, \\ \therefore nr_2A &= ns_2B, \\ \therefore (nr_2 + 1)A &> ns_2B. \end{aligned}$$

Hence putting $nr_2 + 1 = r'$, $ns_2 = s'$ integers r' , s' exist such that

$$r'A > s'B, \text{ but } r'C < s'D,$$

which is of the form (1).

Consequently it is possible to leave out of consideration the forms (2) and (3), since values of r , s can always be found for which the form (1) holds when either (2) or (3) holds.

ARTICLE 80

In connection with the Seventh Definition an important point arises, which is not considered by Euclid.*

In order to simplify the explanation I will take the condition that $(A : B)$ may be greater than $(C : D)$ in the form that some integers r , s must exist such that

$$rA > sB, \text{ but } rC < sD. \dots\dots\dots(1)$$

* Heath's Euclid, Vol. II, p. 130.

Therefore the condition that $(A : B)$ may be less than $(C : D)$ will be that some integers r', s' must exist such that

$$r'A < s'B, \text{ but } r'C > s'D. \dots\dots\dots(4)$$

Now inasmuch as Euclid has not defined a ratio as a magnitude, it is essential *from his point of view* to show that no integers r, s, r', s' can exist which satisfy simultaneously (1) and (4).

To prove this :

It follows from (1) that

$$s'rA > s'sB, s'rC < s'sD,$$

and from (4)

$$sr'A < ss'B, sr'C > ss'D.$$

$$\text{Since } s'sB = ss'B,$$

it follows that $s'rA > sr'A,$

$$\therefore s'r > sr'. \dots\dots\dots(5)$$

$$\text{Since } s'sD = ss'D,$$

it follows that $s'rC < sr'C,$

$$\therefore s'r < sr'. \dots\dots\dots(6)$$

But (5) and (6) cannot co-exist.

Hence no integers r, s, r', s' can exist which satisfy (1) and (4) simultaneously.*

That the conditions (1) and (4) can never hold simultaneously is seen at once when the mode of treating the subject adopted in the preceding chapters is followed, in which $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$ are numbers.

For (1) is equivalent to

$$(A : B) > \frac{s}{r} > (C : D),$$

and therefore makes the number $(A : B)$ greater than the number $(C : D)$.

Whilst (4) is equivalent to

$$(A : B) < \frac{s'}{r'} < (C : D),$$

and therefore makes the number $(A : B)$ less than the number $(C : D)$.

But the number $(A : B)$ cannot be at the same time both greater and less than the number $(C : D)$. Consequently (1) and (4) can never be satisfied simultaneously.

* See Heath's Euclid, Book V. Def. 7.

The Fifth and the Seventh Definitions constitute together the basis on which the structure of the Fifth Book of Euclid's *Elements* is reared. They alone of all the definitions prefixed to the Fifth Book effectively count.

The Third and the Fourth Definitions are not sufficiently definite in form to enter in reality into the argument.

ARTICLE 81

Euclid's Fifth Definition does not define ratio, but it makes it possible to decide the extremely important question whether two ratios are equal, whether they be ratios of commensurable or incommensurable magnitudes. Let us consider for a little the question, What did Euclid understand by a ratio? In particular, did he or did he not regard it as a number? To this question there is in his work no clear or unambiguous answer. I can only set forth the evidence on both sides.

On the one hand

(a) If he regarded a ratio as a magnitude, why does he give a demonstration of Prop. 11, viz. :

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{If } (A : B) = (C : D), \\ & \text{and if } (E : F) = (C : D), \\ & \text{then } (A : B) = (E : F). \end{aligned}$$

Simson says, "The words greater, the same or equal, lesser have a quite different meaning when applied to magnitudes and ratios, as is plain from the Fifth and Seventh Definitions of Book V."

"That those things which are equal to the same are equal to one another is a most evident axiom when understood of magnitudes, yet Euclid does not make use of it or infer that those ratios which are the same to the same ratio, are the same to one another : but explicitly demonstrates this in Prop. 11 of Book V."

(b) If he regarded a ratio as a magnitude, why does he give a demonstration of Prop. 13 ; viz :

$$\begin{aligned} & \text{If } (A : B) = (C : D), \\ & \text{and if } (C : D) > (E : F), \\ & \text{then } (A : B) > (E : F), \end{aligned}$$

which on the hypothesis that ratios are magnitudes amounts only to this :

If each of the symbols X , Y , Z represents a ratio, and if $X=Y$, and $Y>Z$, then is $X>Z$.

On the other hand, if he did not regard a ratio as a magnitude,

(c) Why does he speak of one ratio being greater than another in the Seventh Definition? The term greater, if used in the ordinary sense, can refer only to magnitudes.

(d) Why does he not supply a demonstration in connection with the Seventh Definition showing that if the four magnitudes A , B , C , D are such that integers r , s exist, such that

$$rA > sB, \text{ but } rC < sD, \dots\dots\dots(\text{I.})$$

which are the conditions that $A : B > C : D$; then no integers r' , s' can exist, such that

$$r'A < s'B, \text{ but } r'C > s'D, \dots\dots\dots(\text{II.})$$

which are the conditions that $A : B < C : D$?

Such a demonstration is unnecessary if a ratio is a magnitude, for $(A : B) > (C : D)$ and $(A : B) < (C : D)$ are inconsistent if $(A : B)$ and $(C : D)$ are magnitudes. On the other hand, if it is only a question of a comparison of the distribution of the multiples of A amongst those of B with the distribution of the multiples of C amongst those of D , then a demonstration of the incompatibility of the conditions (I.) with the conditions (II.) is essential (see Art. 80).

(e) Why should he say in the proof of Prop. 10, viz. :

$$\text{If } (A : C) > (B : C),$$

$$\text{then } A > B.$$

$$\text{If } (C : A) > (C : B),$$

$$\text{then } A < B,$$

that the statements

$$(A : C) = (B : C) \text{ and } (A : C) < (B : C)$$

are inconsistent with

$$(A : C) > (B : C) ?$$

For if ratios are magnitudes, this needs no proof; but if they are not so regarded, then the proof given by Euclid of this proposition does not follow from his definitions (see Art. 88).

ARTICLE 82

As to this matter, modern writers are equally in conflict. On the one hand, Stolz, in his *Vorlesungen über allgemeine Arithmetik* (Erster Theil, p. 94), says, "In den auf uns gekommenen geometrischen Schriften des Alterthumes findet sich keine deutliche Spur der Ansicht, dass das Verhältniss zweier incommensurabelen Grössen eine Zahl sei."

Whilst, on the other hand, Max Simon (*Euklid und die sechs planimetrischen Bücher*), so far from agreeing in the usual view that the Greeks saw in the irrational no number, thinks it clear from Euclid, Book V., that they possessed a notion of number in all its generality.

The Arithmeticians and Algebraists of the Middle Ages called the ratios of incommensurable magnitudes "Numeri ficti" or "Numeri surdi," and regarded them as a necessary evil which had to be endured. Michael Stifel, in his *Arithmetica Integra*, published in 1544, treated them as real numbers. His words amount to an assertion that each irrational number as well as each rational number has a single definite place in the ordered number series.*

II. PROPOSITIONS (First Group). Nos. 1, 2, 3, 5, 6.

ARTICLE 83

Denoting positive integers by small letters and magnitudes by large letters these propositions are :

1. $r(A+B+C+\dots)=rA+rB+rC+\dots$
2. $(a+b+c+\dots)R=aR+bR+cR+\dots$
3. $r(sA)$ is the same multiple of A as $r(sB)$ is of B .
5. If $A > B$, then $r(A-B)=rA-rB$.
6. If $a > b$, then $(a-b)R=aR-bR$.

With regard to the first group of propositions I merely call attention to the fact that I have in the preceding chapters replaced No. 3 by another proposition which is more useful, viz. :

$$(r(s))A=r(sA)=s(rA)=(s(r))A.$$

* *Encyklopädie der mathematischen Wissenschaften*, Vol. I. A. 3, p. 51.

Euclid would have found very great difficulty in expressing this clearly in his notation.

III. PROPOSITIONS (Second Group). Nos. 4, 7, 11, 12, 15 and 17

ARTICLE 84

These propositions express properties of Equal Ratios, and are deduced by Euclid *directly* from the Fifth Definition.

(The sign of equality will be used in place of the sign $:$ for "is the same as.")

4. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, then $(rA : sB) = (rC : sD)$.

7. If $A = B$, then $(A : C) = (B : C)$ and $(C : A) = (C : B)$.

11. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, and if $(E : F) = (C : D)$,
then $(A : B) = (E : F)$.

12. If $(A : B) = (C : D) = (E : F)$, and if all the magnitudes are of the same kind, then

$$(A : B) = (A + C + E : B + D + F).$$

15. $(A : B) = (nA : nB)$.

17. If $(A + B : B) = (C + D : D)$, then $(A : B) = (C : D)$.

No. 15 is a particular case of No. 12 (Art. 46).

ARTICLE 85

From No. 17 a very important deduction can be made, bearing on Euclid X. 6, viz. :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{If } (a : b) &= (X : Y), \\ \text{then } X &= aG, \quad Y = bG. \end{aligned}$$

Suppose that X is divided into a equal parts and we call each part G .

$$\text{Then } (a : b) = (aG : bG).$$

$$\text{But } X = aG,$$

$$\therefore (a : b) = (X : bG),$$

$$\text{but } (a : b) = (X : Y),$$

$$\therefore (X : bG) = (X : Y),$$

$$\therefore Y = bG.$$

Hence X, Y have a common measure G .

It will be noticed that the proof of this depends on the

assumption made by Euclid in this and one other place only that the magnitude X can be divided into any number a of equal parts (see Art. 3 (4)).

I am indebted to my friend Mr. Rose-Innes for the following proof of this proposition which does not make this assumption.

It follows from Euc. V. 17, viz. :

$$\begin{aligned} \text{If } (A+B : B) &= (C+D : D), \\ \text{then } (A : B) &= (C : D), \end{aligned}$$

that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{If } (A : B) &= (C : D) \\ \text{and } A > B, \\ \text{then } (A-B : B) &= (C-D : D). \end{aligned}$$

We start from

$$(a : b) = (X : Y).$$

We may suppose $a > b$, for if not we could begin with

$$(b : a) = (Y : X).$$

Suppose then

$$\begin{aligned} a > b, \\ (a : b) &= (X : Y), \\ \therefore (a-b : b) &= (X-Y : Y) \dots \text{Euc. V. 17.} \end{aligned}$$

If $a-b > b$, this can be repeated

$$(a-2b : b) = (X-2Y : Y).$$

Suppose this can be done q_1 times,

$$\therefore (a-q_1b : b) = (X-q_1Y : Y).$$

Let $a-q_1b=r_1$, $X-q_1Y=R_1$,

$$\therefore (r_1 : b) = (R_1 : Y).$$

$$\text{Then } (b : r_1) = (Y : R_1).$$

Apply Euc. V. 17 again as many times as possible.

Suppose we get

$$(b-q_2r_1 : r_1) = (Y-q_2R_1 : R_1).$$

Suppose $b-q_2r_1=r_2$, $Y-q_2R_1=R_2$

$$\text{we get } (r_2 : r_1) = (R_2 : R_1).$$

Going on thus, it is plain from the relations

$$\begin{aligned} a-q_1b &= r_1, \\ b-q_2r_1 &= r_2, \\ \dots \dots \dots \end{aligned}$$

that we are in fact applying the process for finding the greatest common measure of the integers a, b .

Now the integers a, b have certainly unity for a common measure. Hence the process will ultimately come to an end after a *finite* number of steps.

Suppose we have

$$\begin{aligned} a - q_1 b &= r_1, \\ b - q_2 r_1 &= r_2, \\ &\dots\dots\dots \\ r_{n-3} - q_{n-1} r_{n-2} &= r_{n-1}, \\ r_{n-2} - q_n r_{n-1} &= 0. \end{aligned}$$

Then we have at the same time

$$\begin{aligned} X - q_1 Y &= R_1, \\ Y - q_2 R_1 &= R_2, \\ &\dots\dots\dots \\ R_{n-3} - q_{n-1} R_{n-2} &= R_{n-1}, \\ R_{n-2} - q_n R_{n-1} &= 0, \\ \therefore R_{n-1} &\text{ measures } R_{n-2}, \\ \therefore R_{n-1} &\text{ measures } R_{n-3}, \end{aligned}$$

and so on.

$$R_{n-1} \text{ measures } Y \text{ and } X.$$

Thus X and Y have a common measure R_{n-1} .

X contains R_{n-1} as many times as a contains r_{n-1} .

Y contains R_{n-1} as many times as b contains r_{n-1} .

It follows that Euclid might have avoided making the assumption that a magnitude can be divided into any number of equal parts.

In the mode of treatment adopted in this book the assumption was required for the demonstration of Prop. X. (Art. 31). Without it ratios of magnitudes of the same kind could not have been compared with rational numbers.

IV. PROPOSITIONS (Third Group). Nos. 8, 10, 13.

ARTICLE 86

- 8. (i.) If $A > B$, then $(A : C) > (B : C)$.
- (ii.) If $A < B$, then $(C : A) > (C : B)$.

10. (i.) If $(A : C) > (B : C)$, then $A > B$.
 (ii.) If $(C : A) > (C : B)$, then $A < B$.
 13. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, and if $(C : D) > (E : F)$,
 then $(A : B) > (E : F)$.

These propositions deal with properties of Unequal Ratios. The effective part of them is contained in the 8th Proposition, which consists almost wholly in proving that if A, B, C be three magnitudes of the same kind, and if A be greater than B , then integers n, t exist such that

$$nA > tB > nC.$$

(This is the Corollary to Prop. VIII., Art. 12, in this book.) In the proof of this the idea of ratio is not involved.

Euclid's proofs of the propositions in this group depend on his Seventh Definition, but he employs them to prove properties of Equal Ratios and for this purpose only.

Proposition 8

ARTICLE 87

The first part of this proposition, viz. :

If $A > B$, then $(A : C) > (B : C)$,
 is deduced by Euclid from his Seventh Definition.

In the arrangement of the subject presented in this book the fact expressed by the proposition is regarded as one of the fundamental principles from which the conditions of both the Fifth and Seventh Definitions are deduced.

Proposition 10

ARTICLE 88

Euclid assumes in his proof that the statements

$$(A : C) = (B : C) \text{ and } (A : C) < (B : C)$$

are inconsistent with

$$(A : C) > (B : C).$$

Of course, if ratios are magnitudes, this needs no proof ; but Euclid's Fifth and Seventh Definitions do not entitle him to regard them as such.

As Simson pointed out, the proof on Euclid's lines should be as follows :

If $(A : C) > (B : C)$, then by Definition 7 a pair of integers r, s exist such that

rA is greater than sC ,
but rB is not greater than sC .
Consequently $rA > rB$,
 $\therefore A > B$.
Hence if $(A : C) > (B : C)$,
then $A > B$.

This proof is not open to criticism.

V. PROPOSITIONS (Fourth Group). Nos. 9, 14, 16, and 18-25.

ARTICLE 89

9. (i.) If $(A : C) = (B : C)$, then $A = B$.
(ii.) If $(C : A) = (C : B)$, then $A = B$.
14. If A, B, C, D are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $(A : B) = (C : D)$, then $B \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} D$ according as $A \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} C$.
16. If A, B, C, D are magnitudes of the same kind, and if $(A : B) = (C : D)$, then $(A : C) = (B : D)$.
18. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$, then $(A + B : B) = (C + D : D)$.
19. If $(A + C : B + D) = (C : D)$, then $(A : B) = (A + C : B + D)$.
20. If $(A : B) = (T : U)$, and if $(B : C) = (U : V)$, then $T \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} V$ according as $A \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} C$.
21. If $(A : B) = (U : V)$, and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, then $T \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} V$ according as $A \underset{<}{\overset{\geq}{\equiv}} C$.
22. If $(A : B) = (T : U)$, and if $(B : C) = (U : V)$, then $(A : C) = (T : V)$.
23. If $(A : B) = (U : V)$, and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, then $(A : C) = (T : V)$.
24. If $(A : C) = (X : Z)$, and if $(B : C) = (Y : Z)$, then $(A + B : C) = (X + Y : Z)$.
25. If A, B, C, D are four magnitudes of the same kind, and if $(A : B) = (C : D)$, and if A be the greatest of them, then $A + D > B + C$.

All these propositions deal with properties of *equal* ratios, but Euclid's proofs depend directly or indirectly on Props. 8, 10, 13, and therefore ultimately on the Seventh Definition, so that the proofs depend on properties of *unequal* ratios.

Their proofs can, however, be obtained from the Fifth Definition, without using the Seventh Definition, and then 14 can be deduced immediately from 16, 20 from 22, and 21 from 23.

The proof of this last statement is given in the preceding chapters.

ARTICLE 90

There is one point as to the connection between the Fifth and Seventh Definitions in regard to which a misconception may arise. In obtaining the conditions for the equality of ratios in the preceding chapters, use was made of such inequalities as

$$(A : B) > \frac{n}{r} \text{ and } (A : B) < \frac{n}{r},$$

and also of the fundamental assumption that

$$\text{if } A > B, \text{ then } (A : C) > (B : C),$$

but the Seventh Definition itself was not used.

Thus the Fifth and Seventh Definitions are independent of one another.

Hence arguing a priori it might be expected that it would prove to be possible to obtain all the properties of Equal Ratios by means of the Fifth Definition only, if that definition is a full and complete one ; as has in fact been shown.

I proceed now to make remarks on some propositions in this group.

Propositions 14 and 16

ARTICLE 91

In the preceding chapters Prop. 16 was proved first, and Prop. 14 was deduced as a Corollary.

Euclid proves Prop. 14 first, and derives Prop. 16 from it.

If Euclid's proofs given below be compared with the proof of Prop. 16 (see Chapter VIII, Prop. XVIII., Art. 51) it will be seen how many steps there are in Euclid's work which do not suggest themselves to any one trying to follow his argu-

ment ; whilst the proof given in this book is much more direct, the successive steps arising naturally from one another.

Euclid's Proof of Props. V. 14, 16.

- Prop. 14. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 and if $A > C$,
 $\therefore (A : B) > (C : B)$, Euc. V. 8.
 $\therefore (C : D) > (C : B)$,
 $\therefore D < B$, Euc. V. 10.
 $\therefore B > D$.
 If $A = C$,
 $(A : B) = (C : B)$, Euc. V. 7.
 $\therefore (C : D) = (C : B)$,
 $\therefore D = B$, Euc. V. 9.
 $\therefore B = D$.
 If $A < C$,
 $(A : B) < (C : B)$, Euc. V. 8.
 $(C : D) < (C : B)$,
 $\therefore D > B$, Euc. V. 10.
 $\therefore B < D$.
- Prop. 16. If $(A : B) = (C : D)$,
 then $(A : B) = (rA : rB)$, Euc. V. 15.
 $(C : D) = (sC : sD)$, Euc. V. 15.
 $\therefore (rA : rB) = (sC : sD)$, Euc. V. 11.
 If $\therefore rA > sC$, then $rB > sD$, Euc. V. 14.
 $rA = sC$ $rB = sD$, Euc. V. 14.
 $rA < sC$ $rB < sD$, Euc. V. 14.
 $\therefore (A : C) = (B : D)$.

The use of V. 10 in the proof of V. 14 is not an easy matter for the beginner, and there is nothing to suggest the introduction of V. 15 in the proof of V. 16 in the two places where it is employed.

Proposition 18

ARTICLE 92

A very important point is raised by the form of Euclid's proof of Prop. 18. He assumes that if A and B be two magnitudes of the same kind, and C be another magnitude, then a

magnitude D of the same kind as C exists, such that $(A : B) = (C : D)$.

This, as was first pointed out by Saccheri, does not follow from Euclid's definitions. Simson showed how the proof could be made to depend on the definitions,* but the proposition assumed is one of great importance. De Morgan's attempt to prove it (*l.c.*, pp. 60-61, and Heath, Vol. II., p. 171) is insufficient, and in fact the theorem cannot be proved, except in the special case where A, B, C are segments of straight lines, or in cases easily reducible to this case. The result assumed depends on the Axiom by which continuity is ascribed to the system of magnitudes of the same kind as C . This Axiom corresponds to the Cantor-Dedekind Axiom, by which the gaps in the system of rational numbers are filled up by the creation of irrational numbers (see Chapter XI., Prop. XXIV., Art. 70).

Euclid makes the same assumption as to the existence of the Fourth Proportional in the Twelfth Book in Propositions 2, 5, 11, 12, and 18. It has been seen in Arts. 61, 61 (*a*), 61 (*b*) how by the aid of Stolz's Theorem or without it the assumption can be avoided in Euc. XII. 2, and the same method can be employed to avoid the assumption in Euc. XII. 5, 11, 12, and 18.

Propositions 20 and 22

ARTICLE 93

In the preceding chapters Prop. 22 was proved first and Prop. 20 deduced as a Corollary.

Euclid proves Prop. 20 first and uses it to prove Prop. 22.

Propositions 21 and 23

ARTICLE 94

In the preceding chapters Prop. 23 was proved first and Prop. 21 deduced as a Corollary.

Euclid proves Prop. 21 first and uses it to prove Prop. 23.

Remarks similar to those made on Props. 14 and 16 apply to Props. 20 and 22, and to Props. 21 and 23.

* See Prop. XVI. Art. 47.

Propositions 22 and 23

ARTICLE 95

The 22nd and 23rd Propositions bear on what Euclid calls the Compounding of Ratios, but what we should call the Multiplication of Ratios.

Prop. 23 shows that the order of multiplication has no effect on the result.

It is proved that if $(A : B) = (U : V)$, and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, then $(A : C) = (T : V)$.

Now, if A and B were commensurable, it would be possible to write $A = \lambda B$, and then λ would be a rational fraction. But if A and B are *not* commensurable, and if we still put $A = \lambda B$, we must regard λ as the symbol of some kind of operation performed on B , which gives as its result the magnitude A .

Let us further regard the relation $(A : B) = (U : V)$ as justifying the statement that since $A = \lambda B$, $\therefore U = \lambda V$; i.e. we consider that U can be obtained by performing on V an operation which, if performed on B , would give A .

In like manner, if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, and if $B = \mu C$, then $T = \mu U$, where μ is the symbol of some other operation.

$$\therefore A = \lambda B, \text{ and } B = \mu C; \therefore A = \lambda(\mu C).$$

$$\text{Also } T = \mu U, \text{ and } U = \lambda V; \therefore T = \mu(\lambda V).$$

But by Prop. 23, if $(A : B) = (U : V)$, and if $(B : C) = (T : U)$, then $(A : C) = (T : V)$.

If therefore we put $A = \nu C$, then we must have $T = \nu V$, where ν is the symbol of another operation.

Equating the two values of A , we have

$$\lambda(\mu C) = \nu C;$$

$$\therefore \lambda(\mu \text{ and } \nu \text{ are equivalent operations.})$$

Equating the two values of T , we have

$$\mu(\lambda V) = \nu V;$$

$$\therefore \mu(\lambda \text{ and } \nu \text{ are equivalent operations.})$$

Hence the operation denoted by ν is the same as those denoted by $\lambda(\mu$ and $\mu(\lambda$ respectively;

$$\therefore \lambda(\mu \text{ and } \mu(\lambda \text{ are equivalent operations.})$$

Hence the same result is obtained if the operation μ is first performed and then the operation λ , as is obtained when the operation λ is first performed and then the operation μ .

Proposition 24

ARTICLE 96

The 24th Proposition corresponds to what we should call the Addition of Ratios. If we attempt to make use of it, or of the 22nd or 23rd Proposition, the question of the existence of the fourth proportional to three magnitudes, of which the first and second are *of the same kind*, is immediately raised, a matter to which I have already alluded in Art. 92.

Proposition 25

ARTICLE 97

“If four magnitudes of the same kind are in proportion, then the sum of the greatest and least exceeds the sum of the other two”—is an important one.

My interest in it was first aroused by the fact that De Morgan (*l.c.*, p. 72) points out its bearing upon the notions on which the first theory of logarithms was founded.

Euclid does not make use of this proposition in his *Elements*. Sir T. L. Heath tells me that it appears once only in Greek Geometry, viz. in the 69th Theorem of the 7th Book of the *Collectiones Mathematicae* of Pappus, where it is used to show that the shortest intercept on all straight lines drawn through the middle point of the base of an isosceles triangle is the base itself, and that as the straight line turns round the middle point of the base, the intercept made by the sides continually increases until the line becomes parallel to one of the equal sides of the triangle.

It is difficult, if not impossible, to ascertain for what purpose Euclid recorded it. I imagine that most people who look at it think it a comparatively useless result, except in the special case where the second and third terms of the proportion are equal, when it expresses the fact that the arithmetic mean of two magnitudes exceeds their geometric mean.

ARTICLE 98

This special case is, however, very important. It can be used to prove two limits of the utmost value in the Calculus.

(i.) If n be a positive integer, and $a > 1$, then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +\infty$.

To see this, let $V, V_1, V_2 \dots V_n$ be in continued proportion ;

$$\therefore V : V_1 = V_1 : V_2 = \dots = V_{n-2} : V_{n-1} = V_{n-1} : V_n.$$

Suppose $V < V_1$, then from $V : V_1 = V_1 : V_2$, it follows by Euc. V. 25 that $V + V_2 > 2V_1$;

$$\therefore V_2 - V_1 > V_1 - V.$$

Similarly,

$$V_3 - V_2 > V_2 - V_1 > V_1 - V$$

$$\dots \dots \dots$$

$$V_n - V_{n-1} > V_{n-1} - V_{n-2} > V_1 - V.$$

From these it follows that $V_n - V_1 > (n-1)(V_1 - V)$; and

$$\therefore V_n - V > n(V_1 - V) \text{ and } \therefore V_n > n(V_1 - V) ;$$

$$\therefore \frac{V_n}{V} > n \left(\frac{V_1}{V} - 1 \right) \dots \dots \dots (1)$$

Since $V < V_1$, if we put $\frac{V_1}{V} = a$, then $a > 1$; and from the continued proportion it follows that $\frac{V_n}{V} = a^n$; \therefore (1) gives $a^n > n(a-1)$.

From this, by the aid of Archimedes' Axiom, it follows that, if $a > 1$, and n be a positive integer, $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +\infty$. (Cf. De Morgan, *l.c.*, p. 72.)

ARTICLE 99

(ii.) If n be a positive integer, and $a < 1$, then $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +0$.

If in the same continued proportion as in the last case we put $\frac{V}{V_1} = a$, then $a < 1$, and $\frac{V_1}{V_n} = a^{n-1}$.

Now, from $V_n > n(V_1 - V)$ it follows that $\frac{V_n}{V_1} > n \left(1 - \frac{V}{V_1} \right)$,

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{1}{a^{n-1}} > n(1-a) ;$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{n(1-a)} > a^{n-1} > a^n; \quad \because a < 1, \quad \therefore \frac{1}{n(1-a)} > a^n.*$$

From this, by the aid of Archimedes' Axiom, it follows that $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +0$, where $a < 1$, and n is a positive integer.

Upon this last result depends the proof of the convergency of an infinite geometric progression, when the common ratio is less than unity.

ARTICLE 100

The proof which Euclid gives of X. 1 covers the proposition that

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +0, \text{ if } a < \frac{1}{2}.$$

It may be that Euclid included the 25th Proposition in the Fifth Book merely to establish the fact that the arithmetic mean of two unequal magnitudes was greater than their geometric mean, though if that were the case one would think he would have said so explicitly, or one may perhaps be tempted to believe that he had by means of Euc. V. 25 obtained a proof of the result $\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} a^n = +0$, not merely for the range $0 < a < \frac{1}{2}$, but also for the wider range $0 < a < 1$; but that he put it aside because it was not required for the geometrical applications for which Euc. X. 1 was sufficient, and also because the statement of its proof would have been somewhat intricate in his notation. But this of course is mere speculation.

* There is a simpler way of obtaining this result, due, I think, to Professor Hudson, and published some time ago in the *Mathematical Gazette*, as follows: In the identity

$$\frac{1-a^n}{1-a} = 1+a+a^2+\dots+a^{n-1}$$

suppose $0 < a < 1$,

then each term on the right is greater than a^n , and therefore the right-hand side is greater than na^n .

The left-hand side is less than $\frac{1}{1-a}$,

$$\therefore \frac{1}{1-a} > na^n; \quad \therefore \frac{1}{n(1-a)} > a^n;$$

if $0 < a < 1$ and n be a positive integer.

INDEX

(The references are to the articles.)

- | | |
|---|--|
| <p>Addition of Ratios, 96
 Archimedes, Axiom of, 3
 Area of a Circle, 61, 61a, 61b, 65
 — Radian Sector of a Circle, 64
 Associative Law for Addition, 3
 Axiom of Archimedes, 3
 — Cantor-Dedekind, 69</p> <p>Cantor-Dedekind Axiom, 69
 Characteristics of Magnitudes <i>of the same kind</i>, 3
 Circle, Area of, 61, 61a, 61b, 65
 — — Radian Sector of, 64
 — Circumference of, 63
 Circumference of a Circle, 63
 Commensurable Magnitudes, 13-18
 — — Ratios of, 13
 Common Measure, 13
 Commutative Law for Addition, 3
 Compounding of Ratios, 95</p> <p>Dedekind, page x
 Definition of Equal Ratios, 33
 — Fourth Proportional, 40
 — Irrational Numbers, 26
 — Proportion, 40
 — Ratio of Commensurable Magnitudes, 13
 — — Incommensurable Magnitudes, 32
 — Third Proportional, 40
 — Unequal Ratios, 37
 De Morgan, 71, 73, 92, 97, 98 ; pages viii, x, xi</p> | <p>Determination of Independent Conditions in Euc. V., Def. 5, 74-77</p> <p>Equal Irrational Numbers, 28
 — Ratios, 33
 — — Test for, 35
 Euclid, Book V., Definition 3, 71
 — — — 4, 71
 — — — 5, 36, 72, 90
 — — — 7, 78-80, 90
 — — Proposition I., Arts. 5, 83
 — — — 2, Arts. 6, 83
 — — — 3, Art. 83
 Euclid, Book V., Proposition 4, Arts. 43, 84
 — — Corollary to Proposition 4, Art. 44
 — — Proposition 5, Arts. 8, 83
 — — — 6, Arts. 9, 83
 — — — 7, Art. 84
 — — — 8, Arts. 86, 87
 — — — 9, Art. 89
 — — — 10, Arts. 86, 88
 — — — 11, Art. 84
 — — — 12, Arts. 45, 84
 — — — 13, Art. 86
 — — — 14, Arts. 51, 89, 91
 — — — 15, " 46, 84
 — — — 16, " 51, 89, 91
 — — — 17, " 48, 84, 85
 — — — 18, " 47, 89, 92
 — — — 19, " 55, 89
 — — — 20, " 52, 89, 93
 — — — 21, " 53, 89, 94
 — — — 22, " 52, 89, 93
 — — — 23, " 53, 89, 94, 95
 — — — 24, " 56, 89, 96
 — — — 25, " 57, 89, 97</p> |
|---|--|

- Euclid, Book VI., Proposition 1, Art. 49
 Euclid, Book X., Proposition 1, Arts.
 58, 100
 — — X., Proposition 6, Art. 85
 — — XII., " 1, " 60
 — — XII., " 2, Arts. 59, 61,
 61*a*, 61*b*.
 Euclid's View of Ratio, 81-82
 Eudoxus, page vii
 Existence of the Fourth Proportional,
 70, 92
 Extension of the Idea of Number,
 22-28
 Extremes of a Proportion, 40

 Fourth Proportional, 40
 — — Existence of, 70, 92

 Geometrical Applications, 14-17, 49,
 59-67
 — — of Stolz's Theorem, 61, 63, 64, 66

 Heath, Sir T. L., 92, 97 ; page xi
 Hudson, 99

 Incommensurable Magnitudes, 19-21
 Irrational Numbers, 24-26, 68-69
 — — Definition of, 26
 — — Equal, 28
 — — Unequal, 27

 Magnitudes and their Multiples, 4-12
 — *of the same kind*, 1, 2
 Max Simon, 82
 Mean Proportional, 40
 Means of a Proportion, 40
 Measure, Common, 13
 Multiple of a Magnitude, 3
 Multiple Scales, Relative, 73
 Multiplication of Ratios, 95

 Pappus, 97
 Principles on which Theory of Ratios
 of Incommensurable Magnitudes is
 based, 29
 Properties of Equal Ratios. First
 Group of Propositions, 42-48

 Properties of Equal Ratios. Second
 Group of Propositions, 50-53
 — — — Third Group of Propositions,
 54-57
 Proportion, Definition of, 40
 Proportional, the Fourth, 40, 70
 — the Third, 40

 Radian Sector of a Circle, 64
 Rational Numbers, System of, 22-23
 Ratio of two magnitudes of the same
 kind is a number rational or
 irrational, 32
 Ratios, addition of, 96
 — compounding of, 95
 — equal, 33
 — multiplication of, 95
 — of commensurable magnitudes, 13
 — of incommensurable magnitudes,
 29-41
 — unequal, 37
 Relative multiple scales, 73
 Rose-Innes, 58, 61*a*, 61*b*, 85 ; page ix

 Saccheri, 92
 Scales, Relative Multiple, 73
 Simon, Max, 82
 Simson, 81, 88, 92
 Square root of 2, 25
 Stifel, 82
 Stolz, 40, 61*a*, 82
 Stolz's Theorem, 40
 — — Geometrical applications of, 61,
 63, 64, 66
 System of Rational Numbers, 22-23

 Test for distinguishing between Un-
 equal Ratios, 38
 Test for Equal Ratios, 35
 Tetrahedra, their Volumes, 66-67
 Third Proportional, 40

 Unequal Irrational Numbers, 27
 — Ratios, 37
 — — Test for, 38

 Volumes of Tetrahedra, 66-67

1913

CONSTABLE & COMPANY LTD

TECHNICAL & SCIENTIFIC
BOOKS

CONTENTS

	PAGE
Glasgow Text-books of Civil Engineering	2
Outlines of Industrial Chemistry	3
The D.-S. Technical Dictionaries	4
Encyclopædia of Municipal and Sanitary Engineering	5
Practical Manuals for Practical Men	6
The "Westminster" Series	7
Internal Combustion Engines	8
Gas and Gas Engines	9
Steam Engines, Boilers, etc.	10
Fuel and Smoke	12
Machinery, Power Plants, etc.	13
Pumps	15
Iron, Steel, and other Metals	15
Motor Cars and Engines	17
Aeronautics	18
Marine and Naval Machinery	19
Turbines and Hydraulics	20
Railway Engineering	21
Reinforced Concrete and Cement	22
Civil Engineering, Building Construction, etc.	23
Surveying, etc.	24
Municipal Engineering	25
Irrigation and Water Supply	26
Telegraphy and Telephony	27
Electrical Engineering	28
Electro-Chemistry, etc.	31
Lighting	32
Thermodynamics	32
Physics and Chemistry	33
Mathematics	38
Manufacture and Industries	39
Arts and Crafts	43
Useful Handbooks and Tables	43
Natural History, Botany, Nature Study, etc.	44
Agriculture and Farming	47
Law, Patents, etc.	48
Miscellaneous	49
Bedrock	51
Index	52

LONDON: 10 ORANGE ST. LEICESTER SQUARE

Telephone:—12432 CENTRAL.

Telegrams:—DHAGOMA, LONDON.

The Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering

Edited by **G. MONCUR, B.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.**, Professor of
Civil Engineering at the Royal Technical College, Glasgow.

Railway Signal Engineering (Mechanical).

By **Leonard P. Lewis**, of the Caledonian Railway;
Lecturer on Railway Signalling at the Royal Technical
College, Glasgow. *Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/- net. (See p. 21.)*

Modern Sanitary Engineering.

Part I. : House Drainage. By **Gilbert Thomson, M.A.,
F.R.S.E., M.Inst.C.E.** *Illustrated. 6/- net. (See p. 25.)*

Reinforced Concrete Railway Structures.

By **J. D. W. Ball, A.M.Inst.C.E.** *Illustrated. 8/- net. (See p. 21.)*

OTHER VOLUMES TO FOLLOW.

Surveying. By **J. Williamson, A.M.Inst.C.E.**

Foundations. By **W. Simpson, M.Inst.C.E.**

Earthwork. By **W. A. Kemp.**

Railway Permanent Way. By **W. A. Messer,
A.M.Inst.C.E.**

Bridge Work.

Gas Engineering.

Equipment of Docks.

Caisson Construction.

Materials of Construction.

Tunnelling.

Materials of Construction.

**** Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.**

Outlines of Industrial Chemistry

A SERIES OF TEXT-BOOKS INTRODUCTORY TO
THE CHEMISTRY OF THE NATIONAL INDUSTRIES.

EDITED BY

GUY D. BENGOUGH, M.A., D.Sc.

An Introduction to the Study of Fuel.

By F. J. Brislee, D.Sc.

With many Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net. (See p. 12.)

The Chemistry of Dyeing and Bleaching
of Vegetable Fibrous Materials.

By Julius Hübner, M.Sc.Tech., F.I.C.

Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 14/- net. (See p. 37.)

The Chemistry of the Rubber Industry.

By Harold E. Potts, M.Sc. 5/- net. (See p. 38.)

Iron and Steel. An Introductory Textbook for
Engineers and Metallurgists.

By O. F. Hudson, M.Sc., A.R.C.S., and Guy D.
Bengough, M.A., D.Sc. 6/- net. (See p. 16.)

The Chemistry of the Oil Industry.

By J. E. Southcombe, M.Sc., F.C.S. 7/6 net. (See p. 35.)

TO BE FOLLOWED SHORTLY BY VOLUMES DEALING WITH

Leather Trades.

By H. Garner Bennett, F.C.S., M.F.C.

Concrete, Cement, and Bricks.

Dairy Trades.

Alkali and Sulphuric Acid.

Photographic Industries.

And other Volumes.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

A Series of Technical Dictionaries in Six Languages.

The D.-S. Series of Technical Dictionaries in Six Languages.

English. Spanish. German. Russian. French. Italian.

With each word, term, or item, so far as it is possible, a diagram, formula, or symbol is given, so that error or inaccuracy is almost impossible.

- VOL. I.—The Elements of Machinery** and the Tools most frequently used in Working Metal and Wood. Price 5/- net, cloth; 7/6 net, leather.
- VOL. II.—Electrical Engineering**, including Telegraphy and Telephony. Price 25/- net, cloth; 30/- net, leather.
- VOL. III.—Steam Boilers and Steam Engines.** Price 16/- net, cloth; 20/- net, leather.
- VOL. IV.—Internal Combustion Engines.** Price 8/- net, cloth; 12/- net, leather.
- VOL. V.—Railway Construction and Operation.** Price 12/- net, cloth; 16/- net, leather.
- VOL. VI.—Railway Rolling Stock.** Price 10/6 net, cloth; 14/- net, leather.
- VOL. VII.—Hoisting and Conveying Machinery.** Price 10/6 net, cloth; 14/- net, leather.
- VOL. VIII.—Reinforced Concrete in Sub- and Superstructure.** Compiled by **Heinrich Becher.** Price 6/- net, cloth; 8/6 net, leather.
- VOL. IX.—Machine Tools** (Metal Working; Wood Working). Compiled by **Wilhelm Wagner.** Price 9/- net, cloth; 12/6 net, leather.
- VOL. X.—Motor Vehicles** (Motor Cars, Motor Boats, Motor Air Ships, Flying Machines). Edited by **Rudolf Urtel.** Price 12/- net, cloth; 16/- net, leather.
- VOL. XI.—Metallurgy.** Price 10/6 net, cloth; 14/- net, leather.
- IN PREPARATION:—**Vol. XII.—**Hydraulics.**
Vol. XIII.—**Ironwork Construction.**

SOME PRESS OPINIONS:

“We heartily recommend the work to all who have occasion to read foreign articles on engineering.”—*Mining Engineering.*

“The best book, or series of books, of its kind yet attempted.”—*The Engineer.*

“These Dictionaries are the best of the kind yet attempted, and their arrangement and design leave nothing to be desired.”—*Surveyor.*

“Anyone desiring a Technical Dictionary for a foreign language will find this the most comprehensive and explicit that has ever been issued.”—*Mechanical Engineer.*

Detailed Prospectus post free.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
* Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Municipal Engineering.

THE ENCYCLOPÆDIA OF MUNICIPAL AND SANITARY ENGINEERING.

EDITED BY

W. H. MAXWELL, A.M.Inst.C.E.

Borough and Waterworks Engineer, Tunbridge Wells Corporation, etc.

In one volume.

Cloth. Price 42/- net.

Among the many Contributors to this exhaustive work are:—

- | | |
|---|---|
| ADAMS, Professor HENRY, M.Inst.C.E., M.I. Mech.E., F.S.I., F.R.San.I. | JENNINGS, ARTHUR SEYMOUR, Editor of <i>The Decorator</i> . |
| ANGEL, R. J., M.Inst.C.E., A.R.I.B.A., Borough Engineer and Surveyor, Bermondsey. | JENSEN, GERARD J. G., C.E., Consulting Engineer. |
| BURNE, E. LANCASTER, A.M.Inst.C.E., A.M.I. Mech.E., Consulting Engineer. | KENWOOD, H. R., M.B., B.S., D.P.H., Professor of Hygiene and Public Health, University College, London. |
| CHAMBERS, SIDNEY H., Surveyor, Hampton Urban District Council. | LATHAM, FRANK, M.Inst.C.E., Borough Engineer and Surveyor, Penzance. |
| DIBDIN, W. J., F.I.C., F.C.S., formerly Chemist and Superintending Gas Engineer, London County Council. | MARTIN, ARTHUR J., M.Inst.C.E., Consulting Engineer. |
| FIRTH, Lieut-Col. R. H., R.A.M.C. | MOOR, C. G., M.A., F.I.C., F.C.S., Public Analyst for the County of Dorset and the Borough of Poole. |
| FOWLER, Dr. GILBERT J., F.I.C., Consulting Chemist to the Manchester Corporation Rivers Committee. | OWENS, Dr. JOHN S., A.M.Inst.C.E. |
| FREEMAN, ALBERT C., M.S.A. | PARTRIDGE, W., F.I.C. |
| FREEMAN, W. MARSHALL, of the Middle Temple, Barrister-at-Law. | PORDAGE, A., Firemaster, City of Edinburgh. |
| FRETWELL, W. E., Lecturer on Plumbing and Sanitary Science, L.C.C. School of Building. | RIDEAL, S., D.Sc. Lond., F.I.C., F.R.San.I. |
| GARFIELD, JOSEPH, A.M.Inst.C.E., Sewerage Engineer, Bradford. | THRESH, JOHN C., M.D., D.Sc., Medical Officer of Health for the County of Essex. |
| HART, GEORGE A., Sewerage Engineer, Leeds. | THUDICHUM, GEORGE, F.I.C. |
| HOBART, H. M., M.Inst.C.E., M.I.E.E., etc. | WATSON, JOHN D., M.Inst.C.E., Engineer to the Birmingham, Tame and Rea District Drainage Board. |
| | WEBBER, W. H. Y., C.E., Consulting Engineer. |

A detailed Prospectus with list of Contents post free on application.

PRESS APPRECIATIONS.

"A book which will be found indispensable by every official, teacher and student."—*Electrical Engineer*.

"This splendid work which represents the very latest data and practice in the important branches of science which it covers. . . . A book which should become a recognised work of reference among those for whom it is written."—*Electricity*.

"A work which contains just the gist of every important matter. The descriptive matter is rendered still more beneficial by a host of excellent illustrations."—*Iron and Steel Trades Journal*.

"The volume now before us presents, in dictionary form, a series of articles and notes dealing with every branch of municipal and sanitary engineering, in clear and simple terms, quite intelligible to the lay reader. The articles have been written by experts in every branch of work concerned, and the encyclopædia as a whole forms A MOST VALUABLE COMPENDIUM, WHICH WE HAVE CONFIDENCE IN RECOMMENDING."—*The Builder*.

"Lucidly written . . . the book is an excellent one and should be of great assistance to all who are engaged, or otherwise interested, in electricity, water sewage, etc."—*Manchester Guardian*.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Practical Manuals for Practical Men

Fully Illustrated and Indexed

FOUNDATIONS AND FIXING MACHINERY.

By **Francis H. Davies.** 2/- net.

Electric Wiremen's Manuals.

TESTING AND LOCALIZING FAULTS.

By **J. Wright.** 1/- net.

ARC LAMPS AND ACCESSORY APPARATUS.

By **J. H. Johnson, A.M.I.E.E.** 1/6 net.

MOTORS, SECONDARY BATTERIES, MEASURING INSTRUMENTS AND SWITCHGEAR.

By **S. K. Broadfoot, A.M.I.E.E.** 1/- net.

MILL AND FACTORY WIRING.

By **R. G. Devey.** 2/- net.

ELECTRIC MINING INSTALLATIONS.

By **P. W. Freudemacher, A.M.I.E.E.** 2/- net.

SHIP WIRING AND FITTING.

By **T. M. Johnson.** 1/- net.

BELLS, INDICATORS, TELEPHONES, ALARMS, ETC.

By **J. B. Redfern and J. Savin.** 1/6 net.

OTHER VOLUMES IN PREPARATION.

FROM THE TECHNICAL PRESS.

"A valuable series of manuals."—*Electricity.*

"Clearly written and adequately illustrated."—*English Mechanic.*

The Mining World, speaking of the Series, says:—"Likely to be very popular considering the clear manner in which the authors have set down their statements, and the useful illustrations."

The Iron and Coal Trades Review, referring to the Series, says:—"Handy pocket manuals for the practical man."

"A useful little primer . . . The book ('Arc Lamps and Accessory Apparatus') is an eminently practical one, and should be of great assistance when considering the most useful and serviceable arc lamp to adopt under varying circumstances. . . . The author has dealt with the troubles which are usually met with and the best methods of overcoming them."—*Hardware Trade Journal.*

"The author has dealt with his subject ('Mill and Factory Wiring') in a manner which is essentially practical, and has produced a book which is lucid in style, and should fulfil his intention as a manual for wiremen, contractors and electricians. The matter is rendered clear by copious illustrations."—*Surveyor.*

"All that one need know in connection with mill and factory wiring."—*The Mining World.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The "Westminster" Series

Uniform. Extra Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 6/- net each.

- Soils and Manures.** By J. ALAN MURRAY, B.Sc.
The Manufacture of Paper. By R. W. SINDALL, F.C.S.
Timber. By J. R. BATERDEN, A.M.I.C.E.
Electric Lamps. By MAURICE SOLOMON, A.C.G.I., A.M.I.E.E.
Textiles and their Manufacture. By ALDRED BARKER, M.Sc.,
Technical College, Bradford.
The Precious Metals: comprising Gold, Silver, and Platinum.
By THOMAS K. ROSE, D.Sc., of the Royal Mint.
Decorative Glass Processes. By A. L. DUTHIE.
The Railway Locomotive. By VAUGHAN PENDRED, late Editor
of *The Engineer*.
Iron and Steel. By J. H. STANSBIE, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C.
Town Gas for Lighting and Heating. By W. H. Y.
WEBBER, C.E.
**Liquid and Gaseous Fuels, and the Part they play in
Modern Power Production.** By Professor VIVIAN B.
LEWES, F.I.C., F.C.S., Prof. of Chemistry, Royal Naval College, Greenwich.
Electric Power and Traction. By F. H. DAVIES, A.M.I.E.E.
Coal. By JAMES TONGE, M.I.M.E., F.G.S., etc. (Lecturer on
Mining at Victoria University, Manchester).
**India-Rubber and its Manufacture, with Chapters on
Gutta-Percha and Balata.** By H. L. TERRY, F.I.C.,
Assoc. Inst. M.M.
The Book: Its History and Development. By CYRIL
DAVENPORT, F.S.A.
Glass Manufacture. By WALTER ROSENHAIN, Superintendent
of the Department of Metallurgy in the National Physical Laboratory.
**The Law and Commercial Usage of Patents, Designs, and
Trade Marks.** By KENNETH R. SWAN, B.A. (Oxon.), of the
Inner Temple, Barrister-at-Law.
Precious Stones. With a chapter on Artificial Stones.
By W. GOODCHILD, M.B., B.Ch.
Electro-Metallurgy. By J. B. C. KERSHAW, F.I.C.
Natural Sources of Power. By ROBERT S. BALL, B.Sc.,
A.M.I.C.E.
Radio-Telegraphy. By C. C. F. MONCKTON, M.I.E.E.
**Introduction to the Chemistry and Physics of Building
Materials.** By ALAN E. MUNBY, M.A. (Cantab.).
The Gas Engine. By W. J. MARSHALL, A.M.I.M.E., and
Captain H. RIAL SANKEY, R.E., M.I.C.E.
Photography. By ALFRED WATKINS, Past-President of the
Photographic Convention, 1907.
Wood Pulp. By CHARLES F. CROSS, B.Sc., F.I.C., E. J. BEVAN,
F.I.C., and R. W. SINDALL, F.C.S.

FURTHER VOLUMES TO FOLLOW AT INTERVALS.

*Separate detailed prospectuses can be had on application, also a descriptive list
of the Series.*

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Internal Combustion Engines

The Internal Combustion Engine : Being a Text-Book on Gas, Oil, and Petrol Engines, for the use of Students and Engineers.

By **H. E. Wimperis, M.A., Assoc.M.Inst.C.E., Assoc.M.Inst.E.E.** *Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.*

A Primer of the Internal Combustion Engine.

By **H. E. Wimperis, M.A., Assoc.M.Inst.C.E., etc.** *2/6 net.*

The Design and Construction of Internal-Combustion Engines: A Handbook for Designers and Builders of Gas and Oil Engines.

By **Hugo Guldner.** Translated from the Second Revised Edition, with additions on American Engines, by **H. Diederichs,** Professor of Experimental Engineering, Cornell University. *Imperial 8vo. Illustrated. 42/- net.*

The Construction and Working of Internal Combustion Engines.

BEING A PRACTICAL MANUAL FOR GAS ENGINE DESIGNERS, REPAIRERS AND USERS. BY **R. E. Mathot.** Translated by **W. A. Tookey.** *Medium 8vo. With over 350 Illustrations. 24/- net.*

The Diesel Engine for Land and Marine Purpose. *Second Edition.*

By **A. P. Chalkley, B.Sc., A.M.Inst.C.E., A.I.E.E.** With an Introduction by **DR. DIESEL.** *8/6 net.*

CONTENTS.—Expansion of Gases. Adiabatic Expansion. Isothermal Expansion. Working Cycles. Thermodynamic Cycles. Constant Temperature Cycle. Constant Volume Cycle. Constant Pressure Cycle. Diesel Engine Cycle. Reasons for the High Efficiency of the Diesel Engine. Four-Cycle Engine. Two-Cycle Engine. Two-Cycle Double-Acting Engine. Horizontal Engine. High-Speed Vertical Engine. Relative Advantages of the Various Types of Engine. Limiting Power of Diesel Engines. Fuel for Diesel Engines. General Remarks. Four-Cycle Single Acting Engine; General Arrangement. Starting and Running. Description of Four-Cycle Engine. Valves and Cams. Regulation of the Engine. Types of Four-Cycle Engines. High-Speed Engine. Horizontal Engine. Two-Cycle Engine. Air Compressors for Diesel Engines. General Remarks. Space Occupied and General Dimensions. Starting up the Engine. Management of Diesel Engines. Cost of Operation of Diesel Engines. Object of Testing. Test on 200-B.H.P. Diesel Engine. Test on 300-B.H.P.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Internal Combustion Engines—continued.

The Diesel Engine for Land and Marine Purposes—continued.

High-Speed Marine Engine. Test on 500-B.H.P. Engine. Test on High-Speed Diesel Engine. General Considerations. Advantages of the Diesel Engine for Marine Work. Design and Arrangement of Diesel Marine Engines. Methods of Reversing Diesel Engines. Auxiliaries for Diesel Ships. Two-Cycle Engine; Swiss Type. Swedish Type. German Types. Four-Cycle Engine; Dutch Type. German Types. The Future of the Diesel Engine. Lloyds' Rules for Internal Combustion Marine Engines. Diesel's Original Patent.

Gas and Gas Engines

The Gas Engine.

By **W. J. Marshall, A.M.Inst.M.E., and Captain H. Riall Sankey, late R.E., M.Inst.M.E., etc.**

Illustrated. Extra Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS.—Theory of the Gas Engine. The Otto Cycle. The Two-Stroke Cycle. Water Cooling of Gas Engine Parts. Ignition. Operating Gas Engines. Arrangement of a Gas Engine Installation. The Testing of Gas Engines. Governing. Gas and Gas Producers.

The Energy-Diagram for Gas. By F. W. Burstall, M.A., Chance Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the University of Birmingham.

With Descriptive Text. 5/- net. The Diagram sold separately, 2/- net.

American Gas-Engineering Practice.

By **M. Nisbet-Latta**, Member American Gas Institute, Member American Society of Mechanical Engineers.

460 pages and 142 illustrations. Demy 8vo. 18/- net.

Gas Engine Design.

By **Charles Edward Lucke, Ph.D.**, Mechanical Engineering Department, Columbia University, New York City.

Illustrated with numerous Designs. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.

Gas Engine Construction.

Second Edition.

By **Henry V. A. Parsell, Jr., M.A.I.E.E., and Arthur J. Weed, M.E.** Fully Illustrated. 304 pages. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Gas, Gasoline, and Oil Engines, including Gas Producer Plants.

Fifteenth Edition, Reset and Enlarged.

By **Gardner D. Hiscox, M.E.**, Author of "Mechanical Movements," "Compressed Air," etc.

Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

British Progress in Gas Works Plant and Machinery. By **C. E. Brackenbury, C.E.**, Author of "Modern Methods of Saving Labour in Gas Works." *Illustrated. Super-Royal 8vo. 6/- net.*

Town Gas and its Uses for the Production of Light, Heat, and Motive Power. By **W. H. Y. Webber, C.E.** *With 71 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.*

Steam Engines, Boilers, etc.

The Modern Steam Engine: Theory, Design, Construction, Use. By **John Richardson, M.Inst.C.E.** *With 300 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 7/6 net.*

This is a thoroughly practical text-book, but it will also commend itself to all who want to obtain a clear and comprehensive knowledge of the steam engine.

The Una-flow Steam Engine.

By **J. Stumpf.** *Fully Illustrated. 10/6 net.*

Turbines applied to Marine Propulsion.

By **Stanley J. Reed.** *Fully Illustrated. 16/- net.*

Steam Turbines:

Second Revised and Enlarged Edition.

WITH AN APPENDIX ON GAS TURBINES AND THE FUTURE OF HEAT ENGINES.

By **Dr. A. Stodola**, Professor at the Polytechnikum in Zurich, Authorised Translation by **Dr. Louis C. Loewenstein**, Department of Mechanical Engineering, Lehigh University.

With 241 Cuts and 3 Lithograph Tables. 488 pages. Cloth. Demy 8vo. 21/- net.

Boiler Explosions, Collapses, and Mishaps.

By **E. J. Rimmer, B.Sc., etc.** *4/6 net.*

The Steam Engine and Turbine.

By **Robert C. H. Heck, M.E.** *20/- net.*

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Engine Tests and Boiler Efficiencies.

By **J. Buchetti**. Translated and Edited from the 3rd Edition by **Alexander Russell, M.I.E.E., etc.**
Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Boiler Draught. By **H. Keay Pratt, A.M.I.Mech.E.**

Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 4/- net.

CONTENTS:—Draught. Calculations relating to Air. Chimneys. Construction. Artificial Draught. Forced Draught. Induced Draught. A Comparison. The Application of Mechanical Draught for Land Installations. The Application of Mechanical Draught in Marine Practice. The Chemistry of Combustion. Index.

Marine Double-ended Boilers. By **John Gray.**

Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 5/- net.

Steam Boilers : Their History and Development.

By **H. H. Powles, M.Inst.M.E., etc.**
Fully Illustrated. Imperial 8vo. 24/- net.

Boiler Construction. By **Frank B. Kleinhaus.**

420 pages, with nearly 400 Figures and Tables. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.

Steam Pipes : Their Design and Construction. *Second*

By **W. H. Booth**, Author of "Liquid Fuel," etc. *Edition.*
Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 5/- net.

The New Steam Tables. Calculated from Professor Callendar's Researches.

By **Professor C. A. M. Smith, M.Sc., and A. G. Warren, S.Sc.** *4/- net.*

Experimental Researches on the Flow of Steam through Nozzles and Orifices, to which is added a note on the Flow of Hot Water.

By **A. Rateau.** *Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.*

Superheat, Superheating, and their Control.

By **W. H. Booth.** *Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Fuel and Smoke

An Introduction to the Study of Fuel.

A text-book for those entering the Engineering, Chemical and Technical Industries.

By **F. J. Brislee, D.Sc.**

With many Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

General Chemical Principles. Weight and Volume of Air required for Combustion. Analysis of Fuel and Flue Gases. Calorimetry and Determination of the Heating Value of a Fuel. Measurement of High Temperatures. Pyrometry. Calculations of Combustion Temperatures. Natural Solid Fuels. Artificial Solid Fuels. Gaseous Fuel. The Manufacture of Producer Gas and Water Gas. Theory of the Producer Gas and Water Gas Reactions. Explosion and the Explosion Engine. Air Supply and Measurement of Draught. Furnace Efficiency and Fuel Economy. Heat Balances, Furnace and Boiler Tests. Liquid Fuels.

Liquid Fuel and its Apparatus. By **William H.**

Booth, F.G.S., M.Am.Soc.C.E., Author of "Liquid Fuel and its Combustion," etc. *Demy 8vo. Price 6/- net.*

PART I.—THEORY AND PRINCIPLES.

PART II.—PRACTICE.

PART III.—TABLES AND DATA.

Liquid Fuel and its Combustion.

By **W. H. Booth, F.G.S., M.Am.Soc.C.E.,** Author of "Water Softening and Treatment," "Steam Pipes: Their Design and Construction."

With about 120 Illustrations and Diagrams. Imp. 8vo. 24/- net.

Smoke Prevention and Fuel Economy.

By **W. H. Booth, F.G.S., M.Am.Soc.C.E.,** and **J. B. C. Kershaw, F.I.C.**

Fully Illustrated. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.

Liquid and Gaseous Fuels, and the Part they play in Modern Power Production.

By **Professor Vivian B. Lewes, F.I.C., F.C.S.,** Prof. of Chemistry, Royal Naval College, Greenwich.

With 54 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Fuel, Gas and Water Analysis for Steam Users.

By **J. B. C. Kershaw, F.I.C.** *Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Coal.

By **James Tonge, M.I.M.E., F.G.S., etc.** (Lecturer on Mining at Victoria University, Manchester.) With 46 Illustrations. *Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.*

Machinery, Power Plants, etc.

Machine Design.

By **Charles H. Benjamin**, Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Case School of Applied Science. *Numerous Diagrams and Tables. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.*

A Handbook of Testing.

I.—Materials.

By **C. A. Smith, B.Sc., Assoc.M.Inst.M.E., Assoc. M.Inst.E.E.** Professor of Engineering in the University of Hong Kong, late of East London College, Author of "Lectures on Suction Gas Plants," etc. *Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

II.—Prime Movers. *In preparation.*

Mechanical Movements, Powers, Devices and Appliances.

By **Gardner D. Hiscox, M.E.**, Author of "Gas, Gasoline, and Oil Engines," etc. *Over 400 pages. 1646 Illustrations and Descriptive Text. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.*

Mechanical Appliances.

SUPPLEMENTARY VOLUME TO MECHANICAL MOVEMENTS.

By **Gardner D. Hiscox, M.E.**

400 pages. About 1,000 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

The Elements of Mechanics of Materials.

A TEXT-BOOK FOR STUDENTS IN ENGINEERING COURSES.

By **C. E. Houghton, A.B., M.M.E.** *Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 7/6 net.*

Water Softening and Treatment: Condensing Plant, Feed Pumps and Heaters for Steam Users and Manufacturers.

By **William H. Booth.** *Second Edition. With Tables and many Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 7/6 net.*

Cranes: Their Construction, Mechanical Equipment and Working.

By **Anton Böttcher.** Translated and supplemented with descriptions of English, American and Continental Practice, by **A. Tolhausen, C.E.** *Fully Illustrated. Crown 4to. 42/- net.*

"This is by far the finest general work on cranes that has ever appeared. It is very voluminous and illustrated, and describes all existing types."—*Engineer.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Engineering Workshops, Machines and Processes.

By **F. Zur Nedden**. Translated by **John A. Davenport**,
With an Introduction by **Sir A. B. W. Kennedy, LL.D.,**
F.R.S. *Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

Dies : Their Construction and Use for the Modern
Working of Sheet Metals. By **Joseph V. Woodworth**.
384 pages. With Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.

Modern American Machine Tools.

By **C. H. Benjamin**, Professor of Mechanical Engineering,
Case School of Applied Science, Cleveland, Ohio, U.S.A.,
Member of American Society of Mechanical Engineers.
With 134 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 18/- net.

Precision Grinding.

A PRACTICAL BOOK ON THE USE OF GRINDING MACHINERY
FOR MACHINE MEN. By **H. Darbyshire**.
Pages viii. + 162. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. Price 6/- net.

Shop Kinks :

Fourth Edition.

A BOOK FOR ENGINEERS AND MACHINISTS SHOWING SPECIAL
WAYS OF DOING BETTER, CHEAP AND RAPID WORK.
By **Robert Grimshaw**. *With 222 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 10/6 net.*

Cams, and the Principles of their Construction.

By **George Jepson**, Instructor in Mechanical Drawing in
the Massachusetts Normal School. *Crown 8vo. 8/- net.*

The Economic and Commercial Theory of Heat Power-Plants.

By **Robert H. Smith, A.M.Inst.C.E., M.I.M.E.,**
M.Inst.E.E., etc. Prof. Em. of Engineering and Mem.
Ord. Meiji.
Numerous Diagrams. Demy 8vo. 24/- net.

Entropy : Or, Thermodynamics from an Engineer's Standpoint, and the Reversibility of Thermodynamics.

By **James Swinburne, M.Inst.C.E., M.Inst.E.E., etc.**
Illustrated with Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Machinery, Power Plants, etc.—continued.

Compressed Air : Its Production, Uses and Applications. By **Gardner D. Hiscox, M.E.**, Author of "Mechanical Movements, Powers, Devices," etc. *Fifth Edition, Revised and Enlarged.*
665 pages. 540 Illustrations and 44 Air Tables. Demy 8vo. 20/- net.

Natural Sources of Power.

By **Robert S. Ball, B.Sc., A.M.Inst.C.E.**
With 104 Diagrams and Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Pumps

Centrifugal Pumps.

By **Louis C. Loewenstern, E.E., Ph.D., and Clarence P. Crissey, M.E.** 8vo. 320 Illustrations. 18/- net.

CONTENTS.—Theory of Centrifugal Pumps. Consumption of Power and Efficiency. The Calculation of Impeller and Guide Vanes. Design of Important Pump Parts. Types of Centrifugal Pumps. Testing of Centrifugal Pumps.

Pumps and Pumping Engines : British Progress in.

By **Philip R. Björling**, Consulting Engineer, Author of "Pumps and Pump Motors;" "Pumps: their Construction and Management," etc.

Fully Illustrated. Super-Royal 8vo. 6/- net.

Iron, Steel, and other Metals

The Basic Open-Hearth Steel Process.

By **Carl Dichmann**. Translated and Edited by **ALLEYNE**

REYNOLDS. Demy 8vo. Numerous Tables and Formulae. 10/6 net.

CONTENTS.—Introductory. Physical Conditions in an Open-Hearth Furnace System. Buoyancy. General Remarks on Producer Gas. Raw Materials for Producer Working. Reactions on Gasification in the Producer. Stoichiometric Relations. Thermal Conditions in Gasification of Carbon. Influence of the Individual Reactions on the Temperature of Reaction. Influence of Incompleteness of Reactions. Distillation Gas. Producer Gas. Judgment of the Working of Producer from Analysis of the Gas. Temperatures in the Producer. Change of the Composition of Producer Gas in Conduits and Regenerator Chambers. Air Requirement for Combustion of Gas in the Open-Hearth Furnace. Temperatures and Transference of Heat in the Combustion Chamber of the Open-Hearth Furnace. Gas and Air on their way through the Furnace System. Reducing and Oxidising Processes. The Chemical Action of the Flame. Work done by Heat in the Open-Hearth Furnace. Enhancement of the Oxidising Action of the Flame. Occurrences in Open-Hearth Furnaces and their Judgment. The Principle Working Methods of the Basic Open-Hearth. Tables and Formulae.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Iron and Steel.

AN INTRODUCTORY TEXT-BOOK FOR ENGINEERS AND METALLURGISTS.

By **O. F. Hudson, M.Sc., A.R.C.S.**, Lecturer on Metallography, Birmingham University, with a Section on Corrosion by **Guy D. Bengough, M.A., D.Sc.**, Lecturer in Metallurgy, Liverpool University; Investigator to the Corrosion Committee of the Institute of Metals.

CONTENTS.—Section I.—Introductory.—Mechanical Testing. Smelting of Iron Ores. Properties of Cast Iron. Foundry Practice. Mixing Cast Iron for Foundry Work. Malleable Cast Iron. Wrought Iron. Manufacture of Steel.—Cementation Process.—Crucible Steel. Manufacture of Steel—Bessemer Process. Manufacture of Steel—Open-Hearth Process.—Electric Furnaces. Mechanical Treatment of Steel.—Reheating. Impurities in Steel. Constitution of Iron-Carbon Alloys. Heat Treatment of Steel. Special Steels. Steel Castings. Case Hardening.—Welding.

Section II.—The Corrosion of Steel and Iron.

Malleable Cast Iron.

By **S. Jones Parsons, M.E.** *Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.*

CONTENTS:—Melting. Moulding. Annealing. Cleaning and Straightening. Design. Patterns. Inspection and Testing. Supplementary Processes. Application.

General Foundry Practice : Being a Treatise on General Iron Founding, Job Loam Practice, Moulding, and Casting of Finer Metals, Practical Metallurgy in the Foundry, etc. By **William Roxburgh, M.R.S.A.**

With over 160 Figures and Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

CONTENTS:—General Iron Founding: Starting a Small Iron Foundry. Moulding Sands. Location of Impurities. Core Gum. Blow Holes. Burning Castings. Venting. The Use of the Riser in Casting. Chaplets. Shrinkage. Pressure of Molten Iron (Ferro-Static Pressure). Feeding or the Compression of Metals. Metal Mixing. Temperature. Defects in Cast-iron Castings. Special Pipes (and Patterns). Green-Sand and Dry-Sand. Core Clipping. Machine and Snap Flask Moulding. Moulding Cylinders and Cylinder Cores. Jacketed Cylinders. Core-Sands. Moulding a Corliss Cylinder in Dry-Sand. General Pipe Core Making. Chilled Castings. Flasks or Moulding Boxes. Gates and Gating. Jobbing Loam Practice: Loam Moulding. Moulding a 36 in. Cylinder Liner. Moulding a Slide Valve Cylinder. Moulding a Cylinder Cover. Cores and Core Irons for a Slide Valve Cylinder. Moulding a Piston. Loam Moulding in Boxes or Casings. Moulding a 20 in. Loco. Boiler Front Cress-Block. The Use of Ashes and Dry-Sand in Loam Moulding. Moulding and Casting the Finer Metals: Starting a Small Brass Foundry; Furnaces; Waste in Melting; Moulding; Temperatures; Brass Mixtures, etc.; Draw and Integral Shrinkage; Position of Casting and Cooling the Castings. Bronzes: Aluminium; Phosphor; Manganese, and running with the Plug gate. Casting Speculums: The Alloy; Draw; Treatment of

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

General Foundry Practice—continued.

Castings; Compression and Annealing; Melting and Pouring; Moulding. Aluminium Founding; Scabbing; Sand; Gating; Risers; Melting; and Temperature. Aluminium Castings and Alloys. "Malleable-Cast." Practical Metallurgy in the Foundry. General Pattern-making from a Moulder's Point of View. Foundry Ovens and their Construction. Fuels. Foundry Tools.

Hardening, Tempering, Annealing and Forging of Steel. A TREATISE ON THE PRACTICAL TREATMENT AND WORKING OF HIGH AND LOW GRADE STEEL. BY **Joseph V. Woodworth.**

288 pages. With 201 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 10/- net.

Iron and Steel.

BY **J. H. Stansbie, B.Sc. (Lond.), F.I.C.**

With 86 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

The Practical Mechanic's Handbook.

BY **F. E. Smith.** 4/6 net. (See p. 39.)

Welding and Cutting Steel by Gases or Electricity.

BY **Dr. L. A. Groth.** Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

The Precious Metals : Comprising Gold, Silver and Platinum. BY **Thomas K. Rose, D.Sc.,** of the Royal Mint. Fully Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

The Stanneries : A Study of the English Tin Miner.

BY **George R. Lewis.**

Demy 8vo. 6/- net.

"A valuable addition to the history of Cornish mining."—*Mining Journal.*

Motor Cars and Engines

Text-Book of Motor Car Engineering.

BY **A. Graham Clarke, M.I.A.E., A.M.I.Mech. E.**

Vol. I. Construction. Fully Illustrated. 8/6 net.

CONTENTS:—The General Principles and Construction of the Petrol Engine. Details of Engine Construction. Petrol. Fuels other than Petrol. Carburetters and Carburation. Thermodynamics of the Petrol Engine. Horsepower. Mechanical (Thermal and Combustion Efficiencies). The Principles and Construction of Coil and Accumulator Ignition. Magneto Ignition. Engine Control Systems. Engine Cooling Systems. Crank Effort Diagrams. Clutches and Brakes. Change-Speed Gears. Transmission Gear. Steering Gears.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Text-Book of Motor Car Engineering—continued.

Lubricants. Lubrication, Ball and Roller Bearings. Chassis Construction. General Principles of the Steam Car. Steam Engines and Condensers. Steam Generators and Pipe Diagrams. The Electric Car. Materials used in Motor Car Construction. Syllabus of City and Guilds of London Institute in Motor Car Engineering. Examination Papers. Physical Properties of Petrols. Mathematical Tables and Constants.

Vol. II. Design. *Fully Illustrated.* 7/6 net.

CONTENTS.—Introduction. Materials of Construction. General Considerations in Engine Design. Power Requirements. Determination of Engine Dimensions. Cylinders and Valves. Valve Gears. Pistons, Gudgeons and Connecting Rods. Crankshafts and Flywheels. The Balancing of Engines. Crankcases and Gearboxes. Engine Lubricating and Cooling Arrangements. Inlet, Exhaust and Fuel Piping, etc. Clutches and Brakes. Gearing. Transmission Gear. Frames, Axles and Springs. Torque Rods and Radius Rods. Steering Gears.

O’Gorman’s Motor Pocket Book.

By **Mervyn O’Gorman, M.Inst.Mech.E., etc.**
Limp Leather Binding. 7/6 net.

Motor Vehicles and Motor Boats.

See D-S. Technical Dictionaries in Six Languages, page 4.

Aeronautics

Dynamics of Mechanical Flight.

By **Sir George Greenhill** (late Professor of Mathematics in the R.M.A., Woolwich.) *Demy 8vo.* 8/6 net.

CONTENTS.—General Principles of Flight, Light, and Drift. Calculation of Thrust and Centre of Pressure of an Aeroplane. Helmholtz-Kirchhoff Theory of a Discontinuous Stream Line. Gyroscopic Action, and General Dynamical Principles. The Screw Propellor. Pneumatical Principles of an Air Ship.

“The present volume should prove invaluable to every student of aeronautics who wishes to obtain an insight into the principles involved in the construction and working of flying machines.”—

Prof. G. H. Bryan, in the *Aeronautical Journal*.

Aerial Flight. By **F. W. Lanchester. *Fully Illustrated.***

VOL. I.—AERODYNAMICS. *Demy 8vo.* 21/- net.

VOL. II.—AERODONETICS. *Demy 8vo.* 21/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Aeroplane Patents.

By **Robert M. Neilson, Wh.Ex., M.I.Mech.E., F.C.I.P.A.,**
Chartered Patent Agent, etc. *Demy 8vo. 4/6 net.*

Aeroplanes.

See D.-S. Technical Dictionaries, Vol. X., in Six Languages,
page 4.

Airships, Past and Present.

By **A. Hildebrandt,** Captain and Instructor in the Prussian
Balloon Corps. Translated by **W. H. Story.** *Copiously*
Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Marine and Naval Machinery

Marine Engine Design, including the Design of Turning and Reversing Engines.

By **Edward M. Bragg, S.B.** *Crown 8vo. 8/- net.*

Cold Storage, Heating and Ventilating on Board Ship. BY **Sydney F. Walker, R.N.** *Crown* *8vo. 8/- net.*

The problems of cold storage and heating and ventilating are treated exactly as they are presented to a naval architect and marine engineer. Directions are given for detecting the causes of various troubles and remedying them, and, what is more important, explicit instructions are given for operating various types of plants, so as to avoid breakdowns. Comparatively little has hitherto been published on the subject.

The Elements of Graphic Statics and of General Graphic Methods.

By **W. L. Cathcart, M.Am.Soc.M.E.,** and **J. Irvin**
Chaffee, A.M. *159 Diagrams. 12/- net.*

This book is designed for students of marine and mechanical engineering and naval architecture. It reviews the principles of graphics and their application both to frame structures and to mechanism.

Marine Double-ended Boilers.

By **John Gray.** *Fully Illustrated. 5/- net. (See p. II.)*

Handbook for the Care and Operation of Naval Machinery. BY **H. C. Dinger.** *Illustrated.* *Pocket Size. 7/6 net.*

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Turbines and Hydraulics.

Turbines and Hydraulics

Turbines Applied to Marine Propulsion.

By **Stanley J. Reed.** 16/- net.

Modern Turbine Practice and Water Power
Plants, with Terms and Symbols used in Hydraulic
Power Engineering.

By **John Wolf Thurso,** Civil and Hydraulic Engineer.

With many Diagrams and Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 16/- net.

Water Pipe and Sewage Discharge Diagrams.

By **T. C. Ekin, M.Inst.C.E., M.I.Mech.E.** Folio. 12/6 net.

These diagrams and tables with accompanying descriptive letterpress and examples are based on Kutter's formula with a coefficient of roughness of 0.013 and give the discharges in cubic feet per minute of every inch diameter of pipe from 3 to 48 inches when running full on inclinations from 1 to 15 per 1000.

Hydraulics and its Applications: A Text-book
for Engineers and Students. By **A. H. Gibson,**
D.Sc., M.Inst.C.E. 2nd edition, revised and enlarged.

Demy 8vo. 15/- net.

"One of the most satisfactory text-books on Hydraulics extant."—
Mechanical World.

Water Hammer in Hydraulic Pipe Lines:

BEING A THEORETICAL AND EXPERIMENTAL INVESTIGATION OF THE
RISE OR FALL OF PRESSURE IN A PIPE LINE, CAUSED BY THE
GRADUAL OR SUDDEN CLOSING OR OPENING OF A VALVE; WITH A
CHAPTER ON THE SPEED REGULATION OF HYDRAULIC TURBINES.

By **A. H. Gibson, D.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.**

Fcap. 8vo. 5/- net.

Hydraulics, Text-book of: Including an Outline
of the Theory of Turbines. By **L. M. Hoskins,**
Professor of Applied Mathematics in the Leland Stanford
Junior University.

Numerous Tables. Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Hydroelectric Developments and Engineering.

A PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL TREATISE ON THE DEVELOP-
MENT, DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, EQUIPMENT AND OPERATION
OF HYDROELECTRIC TRANSMISSION PLANTS.

By **Frank Köester,** Author of "Steam - Electric Power
Plants." 479 pages. 500 Illustrations. 45 Tables. *Imperial 8vo.*
21/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Railway Engineering.

Railway Engineering

Reinforced Concrete Railway Structures.

By **J. D. W. Ball**, A.M.Inst.C.E. 8/- net.

"Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering."

CONTENTS.—Preliminary Considerations. Bending Stresses. Shear Stress. Floors and Buildings. Foundations and Rafts. Retaining Walls. Bridges. Arched Bridges. Sleepers, Fence Posts, etc. Summary of Notation.

The Design of Simple Steel Bridges.

By **P. O. G. Osborne**, late R.E. 12/6 net.

CONTENTS.—Definitions. Bending Moments. Moments of Flexure. Moments of Resistance. Shear Deflection. Solid Beams and Examples. Struts and Ties. Rivets and Joints. Rolling Loads. Bending Moments, Shear Stresses. Loads. Plate Girders. Bridge Floors. Railways, Roads. Principles of Bridge Design. Plate Girders. Parallel Braced Girders. Braced Girders (2). Shop Practice and General Details.

Reinforced Concrete Bridges. (See p. 22.)

By **Frederick Rings**, M.S.A., M.C.I.

Railway Signal Engineering (Mechanical).

By **Leonard P. Lewis**, of the Caledonian Railway, Glasgow.

("Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering," Edited by G. MONCUR.)

Profusely Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

CONTENTS.—Introduction. Board of Trade Rules. Classes and Uses of Signals. Constructional Details of Signals. Point Connections. Interlocking Apparatus. Signal Box Arrangements. Miscellaneous Apparatus. Signalling Schemes. Interlocking Tables, Diagrams, etc. Methods of Working Trains. Appendix.

Railway Terms. Spanish-English, English-Spanish Dictionary of. By **André Garcia**. 12/6 net.

The Railway Locomotive: What It Is, and Why It Is What It Is.

By **Vaughan Pendred**, M.Inst.Mech.E., M.I. & S.Inst.

Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Railway Shop Up-to-Date.

A reference book of American Railway Shop Practice.

Compiled by the **Editorial Staff of the "Railway Master Mechanic."** 4to. 12/6 net.

The Field Engineer.

18th Edition, Revised and Enlarged

By **William Findlay Shunk**, C.E. Foolscap 8vo. Leather. 10/6 net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Reinforced Concrete and Cement

Reinforced Concrete Railway Structures.

By **J. D. W. Ball, A.M.Inst.C.E.** (See p. 21.)

Reinforced Concrete Bridges.

By **Frederick Rings, M.S.A., M.C.I.**, Architect and Consulting Engineer. 24/- net.

CONTENTS.— List of Symbols. Introduction. Bending Moments, Stresses, and Strains. Loads on Bridges and External Stresses. Culverts, Coverings, Tunnels, etc. Design of Girder Bridges. Calculation of Girder Bridges and Worked Examples. Examples of Girder Bridges. Design of Arched Bridges and Abutments. Theory of the Arch. Examples of Arched Bridges. Formulæ, Notes, Schedules, and other Useful Information.

Manual of Reinforced Concrete and Concrete Block Construction. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.*

By **Charles F. Marsh, M.Inst.C.E., M.Am.Soc.E., M.Inst.M.E.**, and **William Dunn, F.R.I.B.A.**

Pocket size, limp Morocco, 290 pages, with 52 Tables of Data and 112 Diagrams. Price 7/6 net.

A Concise Treatise on Reinforced Concrete : A Companion to "The Reinforced Concrete Manual."

By **Charles F. Marsh, M.Inst.C.E., M.Am.Soc.E., M.Inst.M.E.** *Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 7/6 net.*

Properties and Design of Reinforced Concrete.

INSTRUCTIONS, AUTHORISED METHODS OF CALCULATION, EXPERIMENTAL RESULTS AND REPORTS BY THE FRENCH GOVERNMENT COMMISSIONS ON REINFORCED CONCRETE.

By **Nathaniel Martin, A.G.T.C., B.Sc., Assoc.M.Inst.C.E.**, Former Lecturer on Reinforced Concrete in the Royal West of Scotland Technical College. 8/- net.

Reinforced Concrete Compression Member

Diagram : A Diagram giving the loading size and reinforcements for compression members according to the data and methods of Calculation recommended in the Second Report of the Joint Committee on Reinforced Concrete and adopted in the Draft Regulations of the London County Council.

By **Charles F. Marsh, M.Inst.C.E., M.Am.Soc.E., M.Inst.M.E.**

In Cloth Covers. Mounted on Linen, 5/- net. Unmounted, 3/6 net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Reinforced Concrete and Cement—continued.

Reinforced Concrete.

Third Edition, Revised and Enlarged, of this Standard Work.

By **Charles F. Marsh, M. Inst. C. E., M. Inst. M. E., M. Am. Soc. E.,** and **W. Dunn, F. R. I. B. A.**

654 pages and 618 Illustrations and Diagrams. *Imperial 8vo.* 31/6 net.

Cement and Concrete.

Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.

By **Louis Carlton Sabin, B. S., C. E.,** Assistant Engineer, Engineer Department, U. S. Army; Member of the American Society of Civil Engineers. *Large Demy 8vo.* 21/- net.

Civil Engineering, Building Construction, etc.

The Design of Simple Steel Bridges.

(See p. 21.)

By **P. O. G. Usborne, late R. E.**

The Elements of Structural Design.

By **Horace R. Thayer.** 6/- net.

Reinforced Concrete Railway Structures.

By **J. D. W. Ball, A. M. Inst. C. E.** (See p. 21.)

The Elastic Arch : With Special Reference to the Reinforced Concrete Arch.

By **Burton R. Leffler,** Engineer of Bridges, Lake Shore and Michigan Southern Railway. *Diagrams and Tables. Crown 8vo.* 4/- net.

Graphical Determination of Earth Slopes, Retaining Walls and Dams.

By **Charles Prelini, C. E.,** Author of "Tunnelling."
Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

Tunnel Shields and the Use of Compressed Air in Subaqueous Works.

Second Edition.

By **William Charles Copperthwaite, M. Inst. C. E.**

With 260 Illustrations and Diagrams. *Crown 4to.* 31/6 net.

Modern Tunnel Practice.

By **David McNeely Stauffer, M. Am. S. C. E., M. Inst. C. E.**

With 138 Illustrations. *Demy 8vo.* 21/- net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Timber.

By **J. E. Baterden, Assoc.M.Inst.C.E.**

Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS.—Timber. The World's Forest Supply. Quantities of Timber used. Timber Imports into Great Britain. European Timber. Timber of the United States and Canada. Timbers of South America, Central America, and West India Islands. Timbers of India, Burma, and Andaman Islands. Timber of the Straits Settlements, Malay Peninsula, Japan, and South and West Africa. Australian Timbers. Timbers of New Zealand and Tasmania. Causes of Decay and Destruction of Timber. Seasoning and Impregnation of Timber. Defects in Timber and General Notes. Strength and Testing of Timber. "Figure" in Timber. Appendix. Bibliography.

Pricing of Quantities.

SHOWING A PRACTICAL SYSTEM OF PREPARING AN ESTIMATE FROM BILLS OF QUANTITIES. By **George Stephenson**, Author of "Repairs," "Quantities," etc. *Demy 8vo. 8/- net.*

Building in London. By **Horace Cubitt, A.R.I.B.A.,** etc.

A Treatise on the Law and Practice affecting the Erection and Maintenance of Buildings in the Metropolis, with Special Chapters dealing respectively with the Cost of Building Work in and around London by **H. J. LEANING, F.S.I.**, and the Valuation and Management of London Property by **SYDNEY A. SMITH, F.S.I.**: also the Statutes, Bye-laws and Regulations applying in London; cross-references throughout. *Illustrated, with Diagrams. Royal 8vo. 31/6 net.*

Theory and Practice of Designing. With numerous Illustrations.

By **Henry Adams, M.Inst.C.E., M.I.Mech.E.** *6/- net.*

Motion Study. A Method for increasing the Efficiency of the Workman.

By **Frank B. Gilbreth, M.Am.Soc.M.E.** With an Introduction by **Robert Thurston Kent**, Editor of *Industrial Engineering*. *Crown 8vo. 44 Illustrations. 4/6 net.*

Surveying, etc.

Adjustment of Observations by the *Second Edition.* Method of Least Squares: With Application to Geodetic Work.

By **Professor Thomas Wallace Wright, M.A., C.E.**, and **John Fillmore Hayford, C.E.**, Chief of the Computing Staff U.S. Coast and Geodetic Survey.

With Tables. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.

Surveying. By **J. Williamson, A.M.Inst.C.E.**, in the Series: "The Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering," see page 2.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Municipal Engineering.

Municipal Engineering

Sewage Disposal Works: Design, Construction and Maintenance.

Being a Practical Guide to Modern Methods of Sewage Purification.

By **Hugh P. Raikes, M.Inst.C.E.** *Demy 8vo. 16/- net.*

Rainfall, Reservoirs and Water Supply.

By **Sir Alexander Binnie.** (*See p. 26.*)

Refuse Disposal and Power Production.

By **W. F. Goodrich.** *Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 16/- net.*

Small Dust Destructors for Institutional and Trade Refuse. By **W. F. Goodrich.** *Demy 8vo. 4/- net.*

British Progress in Municipal Engineering.

By **William H. Maxwell, Assoc.M.Inst.C.E.**

Fully Illustrated. Super-Royal 8vo. 6/- net.

Water Pipe and Sewage Discharge Diagrams.

By **T. C. Ekin, M.Inst.C.E., M.I.Mech.E.** *Folio. 12/6 net.*

These diagrams and tables with accompanying descriptive letterpress and examples are based on Kutter's formula with a coefficient of roughness of 0.013 and give the discharges in cubic feet per minute of every inch diameter of pipe from 3 to 48 inches when running full on inclinations from 1 to 15 per 1000.

Modern Sanitary Engineering. Part I. House

Drainage. "Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering."

By **Gilbert Thomson, M.A., M.Inst.C.E.** *6/- net.*

Introductory. The Site and Surroundings of the House. The General Principles of Drainage Design. Materials for Drains. The Size of Drains. The Gradient of Drains. Drain Flushing Traps: Their Principle and Efficacy. Traps: Their Number and Position. "Disconnections." Intercepting Traps and Chambers. Inspection Openings and Manholes. Soil, Waste, and Connecting Pipes. Water Closets. Flushing Cisterns and Pipes. Urinals. Baths. Lavatory Basins. Sinks, Tubs, etc. Trap Ventilation. Designing a System of Drainage. Buildings of Special Class. Test and Testing. Sanitary Inspections. Sewage Disposal for Isolated Houses. Index.

The Encyclopædia of Municipal and Sanitary Engineering. (*See p. 5.*)

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Irrigation and Water Supply

Rainfall, Reservoirs and Water Supply.

BY **Sir Alexander Binnie, M.Inst.C.E.** *Fully Illustrated.* 8/6 net.

CONTENTS.—General. Amount of Rainfall. Average Rainfall. Fluctuations of Rainfall. Probable Average. Flow from the Ground. Intensity of Floods. Evaporation. Quantity and Rate per Head. Quality, Hardness, etc. Impurities. Filtration. Sources of Supply. Gravitation *versus* Pumping. Rivers and Pumping Works. Drainage Areas. Deductions from Rainfall. Compensation. Capacity of Reservoirs. Sites of Reservoirs. Puddle Trenches. Concrete Trenches. Base of Embankment. Reservoir Embankments. Puddle Wall. Formation of Embankment. Masonry Dams. Reservoir Outlets. Pipes through Embankment. Culvert under Embankment. Flow through Culverts. Valve Pit. Central Stopping. Tunnel Outlets. Syphon Outlets. Flood or Bye-Channel. Waste Watercourse and Waste Weir. Aqueducts. Conduits. Pipes. Service Reservoir. Distribution. Valves. Meters. House Fittings.

Irrigation : Its Principles and Practice as a Branch of Engineering.

BY **Sir Hanbury Brown, K.C.M.G., M.Inst.C.E.**

Second Edition. Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 16/- net.

CONTENTS:—Irrigation and its Effects. Basin Irrigation. Perennial Irrigation and Water "Duty." Sources of Supply. Dams and Reservoirs. Means of Drawing on the Supply. Methods of Construction. Means of Distribution. Masonry Works on Irrigation Canals. Methods of Distribution of Water. Assessment of Rates and Administration. Flood Banks and River Training. Agricultural Operations and Reclamation Works. Navigation. Appendixes I, II, III. Index.

Irrigation Works.

THE "VERNON HARCOURT" LECTURES OF 1910.

By **Sir Hanbury Brown, K.C.M.G., M.Inst.C.E.**

Demy 8vo, stiff paper cover. 1/- net.

The Practical Design of Irrigation Works.

BY **W. G. Bligh, M.Inst.C.E.** *Second Edition.*

Enlarged and rewritten, with over 240 Illustrations, Diagrams and Tables. Imp. 8vo. 26/- net.

CONTENTS:—Retaining Walls. Dams (Section). Weirs (Section). Piers, Arches, Abutments and Floors. Hydraulic Formulas. Canal Head Works—Part I. Submerged Diversion Weirs; Part II. Under-slucices; Part III. Canal Head Regulators. Canal Falls. Canal Regulation Bridges and Escape Heads. Canal Cross-Drainage Works. Design of Channels. Reservoirs and Tanks. Screw Gear for Tank Slucices and Roller Gates. Appendix.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Notes on Irrigation Works.

By **N. F. Mackenzie**, Hon. M.A., Oxon.; M.Inst.C.E.;
lately Under-Secretary for Irrigation to the Government of
India. *Demy 8vo. 7/6 net.*

CONTENTS:—Introductory. Statistics required for preparing an Irrigation Project. Types of Weirs. The Development of Irrigation in Egypt since 1884. On the Design of Irrigation Channels. Irrigation Revenue and Land Revenue in India.

Telegraphy and Telephony

The Propagation of Electric Currents in Telephone and Telegraph Conductors.

By **J. A. Fleming**, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S., Pender Professor of Electrical Engineering in the University of London.

Preface. Mathematical Introduction. The Propagation of Electro-Magnetic Waves Along Wires. The Propagation of Simple Periodic Electric Currents in Telephone Cables. Telephony and Telegraphic Cables. The Propagation of Currents in Submarine Cables. The Transmission of High-Frequency and Very Low-Frequency Currents Along Wires. Electrical Measurements and Determination of the Constants of Cables. Cable Calculations and Comparison of Theory with Experiment. Loaded Cables in Practice.

Second Edition. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

Toll Telephone Practice.

By **J. B. Theiss**, B.S., LL.B., and **Guy A. Joy**, B.E.
WITH AN INTRODUCTORY CHAPTER. BY **Frank F. Fowle**,
S.B. *Fully Illustrated. 14/- net.*

CONTENTS.—Rural Telephone Equipment. Toll Cut-in Stations. Toll Positions at a Local Switchboard. Toll Switching Systems. Small Toll Switchboards. Multiple-Drop Toll Switchboards. Multiple-Lamp Toll Switchboards. Toll Connections to Local Automatic Systems. Supervisory Equipment and Toll Chief Operator's Desk. Toll Wire Chief's Desk. Simplex Systems. Composite Systems. Phantom Lines. Test and Morse Boards. Small Test Panels. Line Construction. Electrical Reactions in Telephone Lines. Cross Talk and Inductive Disturbances. Methods of Testing. Toll Line Maintenance. The Telephone Repeater.

Radio-Telegraphy.

By **C. C. F. Monckton**, M.I.E.E.

With 173 Diagrams and Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Maxwell's Theory and Wireless Telegraphy.

PART I.—Maxwell's Theory and Hertzian Oscillations, by

H. Poincaré; translated by **F. K. Vreeland** PART II.—

The Principles of Wireless Telegraphy, by **F. K. Vreeland**.

Diagrams. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The Telegraphic Transmission of Photographs. By **T. Thorne Baker, F.C.S., F.R.P.S., A.I.E.E.**

With 66 Illustrations and Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 2/6 net.

Public Ownership of Telephones.

By **A. N. Holcombe.** 8vo. 8/6 net.

"We commend this book to the notice of all interested in the study of telephone development and administration."—*Electricity.*

Electrical Engineering

Application of Electric Power to Mines and Heavy Industries.

By **W. H. Patchell, M.Inst.Mech.E., M.Inst.C.E., M.I.M.E., M.Am.Inst.E.E.** 10/6 net.

CONTENTS.—Electricity in Mines. Cables. Coal Cutters and Underground Details. Haulage Gears. Rating of Haulages. Winding Engines. Types of Electric Winders. Ventilation and Air Compressing. Pumping. Rolling Mills. Machine Tools and Cranes. Electric Welding and Furnaces.

Electric Mechanism. PART I.

SINGLE-PHASE COMMUTATOR MOTORS. 7/6 net.

By **F. Credeney, A.C.G.I., A.M.I.E.E., Assoc.Am.I.E.E.**

CONTENTS.—The Chief Types of Single-Phase Motor. Characteristics of Series Type Motors. Flux and Current Distribution in Alternating Current Motors. Series Type Motors. Single-Phase Shunt Type Motors. A more exact Theory of the Series Type Motors. Definitions and Preliminary Investigations. The Effects of Magnetic Leakage on the Series Type Motors. Effects of Resistance, Saturation, and the Commutating Coil. Comparison of Theory with Experiment.

Switches and Switchgear.

By **R. Edler.** Translated, Edited and Adapted to English and American Practice by **Ph. Laubach, A.M.I.E.E.**

Fully Illustrated. 12/6 net.

CONTENTS.—General Remarks on the Design of Switchgear. Connecting Leads—Cable Sockets—Connections—Copper Bars—Contact Blocks—Bolts. Contact Springs and Brushes—Carbon Contacts—Devices to Eliminate Sparking at the Main Contacts. Switches and Change-over Switches for Low Pressure and Medium Pressure. High Pressure Switches. Fuses. Self-Acting Switches (Automatic Switches). Starting and Regulating Resistances—Controllers.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Solenoids, Electromagnets and Electro-magnetic Windings.

By **Charles Underhill**, Assoc. Mem. A.I.E.E.
346 pages. Cloth. 218 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

Electrical Engineer's Pocket Book. "FOSTER."

A HANDBOOK OF USEFUL DATA FOR ELECTRICIANS AND ELECTRICAL ENGINEERS.

By **Horatio A. Foster**, Mem. A.I.E.E., Mem. A.S.M.E.
With the Collaboration of Eminent Specialists.

Fifth Edition, completely Revised and Enlarged. Pocket size. Leather bound. With thumb index. Over 1,600 pp. Illustrated. 21/- net.

The Propagation of Electric Currents in Telephone and Telegraph Conductors.

By **J. A. Fleming**, M.A., D.Sc., F.R.S. (See p. 27.)

The Design of Static Transformers.

By **H. M. Hobart**, B.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.

Demy 8vo. Over 100 Figures and Illustrations. 6/- net.

Electricity: A Text-book of Applied Electricity. By **H. M. Hobart**, B.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.

Heavy Electrical Engineering.

By **H. M. Hobart**, B.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.

Fully Illustrated with Diagrams, etc. Demy 8vo. 16/- net.

Electric Railway Engineering.

By **H. F. Parshall**, M.Inst.C.E., etc., and **H. M. Hobart**, B.Sc., M.Inst.C.E.

476 pages and nearly 600 Diagrams and Tables. Imp. 8vo. 42/- net.

American Electric Central Station Distribution Systems.

By **Harry Barnes Gear**, A.B., M.E., Associate Member American Institute of Electrical Engineers, and **Paul Francis Williams**, E.E., Associate Member American Institute of Electrical Engineers. *Fully illustrated. 12/- net.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Electric Railways: Theoretically and Practically Treated.

Illustrated with Numerous Diagrams. Demy 8vo. Price 10/6 net each volume. Sold separately.

By **Sidney W. Ashe, B.S.**, Department of Electrical Engineering, Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn, and **J. D. Keiley**, Assistant Electrical Engineer, N.Y.C. and H.R.R.R.

VOL. I.—ROLLING STOCK.

VOL. II.—ENGINEERING PRELIMINARIES AND DIRECT-CURRENT SUB-STATIONS.

Electric Lamps.

By **Maurice Solomon, A.M.I.E.E.** 6/- net.

Hydroelectric Developments and Engineering.

A PRACTICAL AND THEORETICAL TREATISE ON THE DEVELOPMENT, DESIGN, CONSTRUCTION, EQUIPMENT AND OPERATION OF HYDROELECTRIC TRANSMISSION PLANTS.

By **Frank Köester**, Author of "Steam - Electric Power Plants." 479 pages. 500 Illustrations. 45 Tables. Imperial 8vo. 21/- net.

Steam-Electric Power Plants.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE DESIGN OF CENTRAL LIGHT AND POWER STATIONS AND THEIR ECONOMICAL CONSTRUCTION AND OPERATION.

By **Frank Köester**. 474 pages. Fully Illustrated. Cr. 4to. 21/- net

Electric Power Transmission.

Fifth Edition.

Revised and Enlarged.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE FOR PRACTICAL MEN.

By **Louis Bell, Ph.D., M.Am.I.E.E.**

With 350 Diagrams and Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 16/- net.

The Art of Illumination.

By **Louis Bell, Ph.D. M.Am.I.E.E.**

Fully Illustrated. 345 pages. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Electric Power and Traction.

By **F. H. Davies, A.M.I.E.E.**

With 66 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Industrial Electrical Measuring Instruments.

By **Kenelm Edgcumbe, A.M.Inst.C.E., M.I.E.E.**

240 pp. 126 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Laboratory and Factory Tests in Electrical Engineering.

By **George F. Sever** and **Fitzhugh Townsend**.

Second Edition. Thoroughly revised. 282 pages. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.

The Theory of Electric Cables and Networks. By **Alexander Russell, M.A., D.Sc.**

Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

Testing Electrical Machinery.

By **J. H. Morecroft** and **F. W. Hehre.** 6/- net.

Continuous Current Engineering.

By **Alfred Hay, D.Sc., M.I.E.E.**

About 330 pages. Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 5/- net.

Direct and Alternating Current Testing.

By **Frederick Bedell, Ph.D.**, Professor of Applied Electricity, Cornell University. Assisted by **Clarence A. Pierce, Ph.D.**

Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 8/- net.

"It will be found useful by teachers, students, and electrical engineers in general practice."—*Electrical Engineer.*

Internal Wiring of Buildings. *Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged.*

By **H. M. Leaf, M.I.Mech.E., etc.** *Fully Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3/6 net.*

Searchlights: Their Theory, Construction and Application.

By **F. Nerz.** Translated from the German by **Charles Rodgers.** *Fully Illustrated. Royal 8vo. 7/6 net.*

Electro-Chemistry, etc.

Experimental Electro-Chemistry.

By **N. Monroe Hopkins, Ph.D.**, Assistant Professor of Chemistry in The George Washington University, Washington, D.C.

With 130 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 12/- net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Practical Electro-Chemistry. *Second Edition, Revised.*

By **Bertram Blount, F.S.C., F.C.S., Assoc.Inst.C.E.**
Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 15/- net.

Electro-Metallurgy.

By **J. B. C. Kershaw, F.I.C.**
With 61 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Electric Furnaces. By **J. Wright.**

New 2nd Edition, Revised and Enlarged. With 67 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

CONTENTS:—Introductory and General. Efficiency of the Electric Furnace. Arc Furnaces, Resistance Furnaces. **Carbide Furnaces. Smelting and Ore Reduction in the Electric Furnace. Distillation of Metals. Electrolytic Furnaces.** Laboratory Furnaces and Dental Muffles. Tube Furnaces. Glass Manufacture in the Electric Furnace. Electrodes and Terminal Connections. Furnace Thermometry.

Lighting

Electric Lamps.

By **Maurice Solomon, A.C.G.I., A.M.I.E.E.**
Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

The Art of Illumination.

By **Louis Bell, Ph.D., M.Am.I.E.E.**
Fully Illustrated. 345 pages. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Town Gas and its Uses for the Production of Light, Heat, and Motive Power.

By **W. H. Y. Webber, C.E.**
With 71 Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Thermodynamics

Entropy : Or, Thermodynamics from an Engineer's Standpoint, and the Reversibility of Thermodynamics.

By **James Swinburne, M.Inst.C.E., M.Inst.E.E., etc.**
Illustrated with Diagrams. Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.

Applied Thermodynamics for Engineers.

By **William D. Ennis, M.E., M.Am.Soc.Mech.E.** Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn. *With 316 Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 21/- net.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Technical Thermodynamics.

By **Dr. Gustav Zeuner**. First English Edition. From the fifth complete and revised edition of "Grundzüge der Mechanischen Wärmetheorie."

VOL. I.—Fundamental Laws of Thermodynamics; Theory of Gases.

VOL. II.—The Theory of Vapours.

Authorised translation by **J. F. Klein, D.E.**, Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Lehigh University.

Illustrated. 2 volumes. Demy 8vo. 36/- net.

A Text-Book of Thermodynamics.

By **J. R. Partington**, of the University of Manchester.
14/- net.

Physics and Chemistry

Industrial Chemistry: A Manual for the Student and Manufacturer.

EDITED BY **Allen Rogers**, in charge of Industrial Chemistry, Pratt Institute, Brooklyn, N.Y.; and **Alfred B. Aubert**, formerly Professor of Chemistry in the University of Maine, in collaboration with many experts, containing 340 Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 24/- net.

CONTENTS.—General Processes. Materials of Construction. Water for Industrial Purposes. Fluids. Producer Gas. Power Transmission, Boilers, Engines and Motors. Sulphuric Acid. Nitric Acid. Salt and Hydrochloric Acid. Commercial Chemicals. Chlorine and Allied Products. Electrochemical Industries. Lime, Cement and Plaster. Clay, Bricks and Pottery. Glass. Dutch Process White Lead. Sublimed White Lead. Pigments, Oils and Paints. The Metallurgy of Iron and Steel. Fertilizers. Illuminating Gas. Coal Tar and its Distillation Products. The Petroleum Industry. The Destructive Distillation of Wood. Oils, Fats and Waxes. Lubricating Oils. Soaps, Glycerine and Candles. Laundering. Essential Oils, Synthetic Perfumes, and Flavouring Materials. Resins, Oleo-Resins, Gum-Resins and Gums. Varnish. Sugar. Starch, Glucose, Dextrin and Gluten. Brewing and Malting. Wine Making. Distilled Liquors. Textiles. Dyestuffs and Their Application. The Art of Paper Making. Explosives. Leather. Vegetable Tanning Materials. Glue and Gelatine. Casein.

Problems in Physical Chemistry. With Practical Applications.

By **E. B. R. Prideaux, M.A., D.Sc.**, with a Preface by **F. G. Donnan, M.A., Ph.D., F.R.S.** 7/6 net.

CONTENTS.—Prefaces. Mathematical Methods and Formulæ. Table of Logarithms (folder at end). List of Symbols and Abbreviations. Units and Standards of Measurement. Thermochemistry. Systems of One Component. Mixtures. Gas Reactions. Reactions in Solution. Electromotive Force. Kinetics of Molecular and Radioactive Change.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The Theory of Ionization of Gases by Collision.

By **John S. Townsend, M.A., F.R.S.**, Wykeham Professor of Physics in the University of Oxford.

Crown 8vo. 3/6 net.

Chemical Theory and Calculations: An Elementary Text-book.

By **Forsyth J. Wilson, D.Sc. (Edin.), Ph.D. (Leipzig)**, and **Isidor M. Heilbron, Ph.D. (Leipzig), F.I.C., A.R.T.C.** 2/6 net.

Radio-Activity and Geology.

By **John Joly, M.A., Sc.D., F.R.S.**, Professor of Geology and Mineralogy in the University of Dublin.

Crown 8vo. 7/6 net.

The Corpuscular Theory of Matter.

By **Sir J. J. Thomson, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., LL.D., Ph.D.**, Professor of Experimental Physics, Cambridge, and Professor of Natural Philosophy at the Royal Institution, London. *Demy 8vo. 7/6 net.*

Electricity and Matter.

By **Sir J. J. Thomson, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., LL.D., Ph.D.**, *Crown 8vo. 5/- net.*

The Discharge of Electricity through Gases.

By **Sir J. J. Thomson, M.A., F.R.S., D.Sc., LL.D., Ph.D.** *Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.*

The Electrical Nature of Matter and Radio-activity.

By **H. C. Jones**, Professor of Physical Chemistry in the Johns Hopkins University.

Second Edition. Revised and largely rewritten. Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

Radio-Active Transformations.

By **Ernest Rutherford, F.R.S.**, Professor of Physics at the McGill University, Montreal, Canada.

Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 16/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Principles of Microscopy.

BEING AN INTRODUCTION TO WORK WITH THE MICROSCOPE.
By **Sir A. E. Wright, M.D., F.R.S., D.Sc., Dublin,**
(**Honoris Causa**) **F.R.C.S.I. (Hon.).**
With many Illustrations and Coloured Plates. Imp. 8vo. 21/- net.

Experimental and Theoretical Applications of Thermodynamics to Chemistry.

By **Professor Walter Nernst, University of Berlin.**
Ex. Crown 8vo. 5/- net.

Vapours for Heat Engines.

By **William D. Ennis, M.E., Mem.Am.Soc.M.E.,** Professor of Mechanical Engineering in the Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn, Author of "Applied Thermodynamics for Engineers," etc. With 21 Tables and 17 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.

Considerations relating to the use of Fluids other than Steam for Power Generation: A Study of desirable Vacuum Limits in Simple Condensing Engines: Methods for Computing Efficiencies of Vapour Cycles with Limited Expansion and Superheat: A Volume-Temperature Equation for Dry Steam and New Temperature—Entropy Diagrams for Various Engineering Vapours.

Chemistry of the Oil Industries.

By **J. E. Southcombe, M.Sc.,** Lecturer on Oils and Fats, Royal Salford Technical Institute, etc. 7/6 net.

CONTENTS:—Preface. Introductory Organic Chemistry. Mineral Oils. Petroleum and Shale. Mineral Oil Refining. Natural Sources and Methods of Preparation of the Saponifiable Oils and Fats. Impurities occurring in Crude Oils and Fats and the Technical Methods of Removing them. Composition and Properties of the Saponifiable Oils and Fats in General. Composition and Properties of the Individual Oils and Fats of Commercial Importance. The Natural Waxes, their Composition, and Properties. Analytical Methods. Industrial Applications of Fats and Oils. Burning Oils. Edible Oils and Margarines. Polymerised, Boiled and Blown Oils. Turkey-Red Oils. Saponification of Fats and Oils on a Technical Scale. The Distillation of Fatty Acids. Oleines and Stearines. Candle Manufacture. Soap Making. Glycerine. Conclusion: Scientific and Technical Research on Problems in the Oil and Related Industries. Literature.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

A Text-Book of Physics.

By **H. E. Hurst, B.A., B.Sc.**, Hertford College, Oxford, late Demonstrator in Physics in the University Museum, Oxford, and **R. T. Lattey, M.A.**, Royal Naval College, Dartmouth, late Demonstrator in Physics in the University Museum, Oxford.

Illustrations and Diagrams. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

Now published also in three volumes, at the request of many teachers. Each part is sold separately.

PART I.—DYNAMICS AND HEAT. 3/6 net.

PART II.—LIGHT AND SOUND. 3/6 net.

PART III.—MAGNETISM AND ELECTRICITY. 4/- net.

Introduction to the Chemistry and Physics of Building Materials.

By **Alan E. Munby, M.A. (Cantab.)**. *Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

Exercises in Physical Chemistry.

By **Dr. W. A. Roth**, Professor of Chemistry in the University of Greifswald. Authorised Translation by **A. T. Cameron, M.A., B.Sc.**, of the University of Manitoba. *Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

The Chemistry of Paints and Paint Vehicles.

By **C. H. Hall, B.S.** *Crown 8vo. 8/- net.*

Liquid Air and the Liquefaction of Gases. Second Edition.

By **T. O'Connor Sloane, M.A., M.E., Ph.D.**

Many Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Chemical Re-agents : Their Purity and Tests.

A NEW AND IMPROVED TEXT, BASED ON AND REPLACING THE LATEST EDITION OF KRAUCH'S MANUAL.

By **E. Merck**. Translated by **H. Schenck**. 250 pages. *Demy 8vo. 6/- net.*

Van Nostrand's Chemical Annual.

A HANDBOOK OF USEFUL DATA FOR ANALYTICAL, MANUFACTURING, AND INVESTIGATING CHEMISTS, AND CHEMICAL STUDENTS.

Edited by **John C. Olsen, M.A., Ph.D.**, Professor of Analytical Chemistry, Polytechnic Institute, Brooklyn; with the co-operation of Eminent Chemists. *Nearly 100 Tables. Crown 8vo. 12/6 net.*

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Practical Methods of Inorganic Chemistry.

By **F. Mollwo Perkin, Ph.D.**

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 2/6 net.

Contemporary Chemistry.

By **E. E. Fournier D'Albe, B.Sc., A.R.C.S., M.R.I.A.,**

Author of "The Electron Theory," etc. *4/- net.*

Special attention has been paid to physical chemistry and to current attempts at physical and electrical theories of chemical phenomena.

CONTENTS:—Preface. The Situation. A Retrospect. The Molecule. States of Aggregation. Optical Chemistry. The Theory of Solutions. Osmotic Pressure. Affinity. Valency. Chemistry and Electricity. Chemical Analysis. Crystallisation. Carbon Compounds. Chemistry and Life. The Chemistry of Metals. Industrial Chemistry. The Atomic Theory. Radioactivity. The Chemistry of the Future. Name Index. Subject-Matter Index.

The Identification of Organic Compounds.

By **G. B. Neave, M.A., D.Sc.,** and **I. M. Heilbron, Ph.D.,**

F.I.C., etc. *Crown 8vo. 4/- net.*

Dairy Laboratory Guide.

By **C. W. Melick, B.S.A., M.S.** *Crown 8vo, with 52 Illustrations.*

5/- net.

Detection of Common Food Adulterants.

By **Prof. E. M. Bruce.** *Crown 8vo. 5/- net.*

A handbook for health officers, food inspectors, chemistry teachers and students.

The Chemistry of Dyeing and Bleaching of Vegetable Fibrous Materials.

By **Julius Hübner, M.Sc. Tech., F.I.C.**

Demy 8vo. Illustrated. 14/- net.

CONTENTS:—The Vegetable Fibres. Water. Chemicals and Mordants. Bleaching. Mercerising. Mineral Colours. The Natural Colouring Matters. Basic Cotton Dyestuffs. Substantive Cotton Dyestuffs. Sulphur Dyestuffs. Acid and Resorcin Dyestuffs. Insoluble Azocolours, produced on the fibre. The Vat Dyestuffs. Mordant Dyestuffs. Colours produced on the fibre by Oxidation. Dyeing Machinery. Estimation of the Value of Dyestuffs. Appendix. Index.

The Chemistry of the Coal Tar Dyes.

By **Irving W. Fay, Ph.D. (Berlin).**

Demy 8vo. 470 pages. 16/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The Chemistry of the Rubber Industry.

By **Harold E. Potts, M.Sc.** Member International Rubber Testing Committee. 5/- net.

CONTENTS:—The Colloidal State. Raw Rubber. Gutta-Percha and Balata. Mixing. Vulcanisation, History. Vulcanised Rubber.

The Colloidal and Crystalloidal State of Matter. With numerous Illustrations.

By **H. E. Potts, M.Sc.**, and **W. J. Breitland.** Translated from the German of **Professor P. Rohland.**

Crown 8vo. 4/- net.

Nitrocellulose Industry.

By **Edward Chauncey Warden, Ph.C., M.A., F.C.S.**

2 vols. 1,240 Pages. 324 Illustrations. Sm. 4to. 42/- net.

A compendium of the history, chemistry, manufacture, commercial application and analysis of nitrates, acetates and Xanthates of cellulose as applied to the peaceful arts, with a chapter on gun cotton, smokeless powder and explosive cellulose nitrates.

Materials for Permanent Painting.

By **M. Toch, F.C.S.**

Frontispiece in Colour and other Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7/6 net.

A manual for manufacturers, art dealers, artists and collectors, explaining the composition of the materials used in painting.

Mathematics

The Calculus and its Applications. A Practical Treatise for Beginners, especially Engineering Students. With over 400 examples, many of them fully worked out.

By **Robert Gordon Blaine, M.E., Assoc. M.Inst. C.E.**

Principal Secretary Co. Antrim Joint Technical Education Department. Formerly Lecturer at the City Guilds' Technical College, Finsbury, London, etc. Author of "Hydraulic Machinery," "Lessons in Practical Mechanics," "The Slide Rule," etc.

Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.

Integration by Trigonometric and Imaginary Substitution. By **Charles O. Gunther**, with an Introduction by **J. Burkett Webb, C.E.** Demy 8vo. 5/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Mathematics for the Practical Man.

By **George Howe, M.E.**

Crown 8vo. 5/- net.

A short work explaining all the elements of Algebra, Geometry, Trigonometry, Logarithms, Co-ordinate Geometry, and Calculus.

Quaternions, as the Result of Algebraic Operations.

By **Arthur Latham Baker, Ph.D.**

Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

The Practical Mechanic's Handbook.

By **F. E. Smith.** 4/6 net.

CONTENTS:—Arithmetic. Arithmetical Signs and Characters and Explanation of Solving Formula. Mensuration. How the Dimensions, Measurements, and Weight of Different Shaped Vessels is Found. The Primary or Simple Machines. Strength of Materials and Questions Relating to Stress.

Manufacture and Industries

Chemistry of the Oil Industries.

By **J. E. Southcombe, M.Sc.,** Lecturer on Oils and Fats, Royal Salford Technical Institute, etc. 7/6 net.

CONTENTS:—Preface. Introductory Organic Chemistry. Mineral Oils. Petroleum and Shale. Mineral Oil Refining. Natural Sources and Methods of Preparation of the Saponifiable Oils and Fats. Impurities occurring in Crude Oils and Fats and the Technical Methods of Removing them. Composition and Properties of the Saponifiable Oils and Fats in General. Composition and Properties of the Individual Oils and Fats of Commercial Importance. The Natural Waxes, their Composition and Properties. Analytical Methods. Industrial Applications of Fats and Oils. Burning Oils. Edible Oils and Margarines. Polymerised, Boiled and Blown Oils. Turkey-Red Oils. Saponification of Fats and Oils on a Technical Scale. The Distillation of Fatty Acids. Oleines and Stearines. Candle Manufacture. Soap-Making Glycerine. Conclusion: Scientific and Technical Research on Problems in the Oil and Related Industries. Literature.

Materials used in Sizing.

By **W. F. A. Ermen.** 5/- net.

CONTENTS:—The Starches and other Agglutinants. Weighting Materials. Softening Ingredients. Antiseptics. Analysis of Sized Warps and Cloth. The Preparation of Normal Volumetric Solutions. Tables.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Mineral and Aerated Waters, and the Machinery for their Manufacture.

By **C. Answorth Mitchell, B.A. (Oxon.), F.I.C.** 8/6 net.

CONTENTS:—Origin and Properties of Natural Mineral Waters. Gases in Natural Waters. Holy Wells. The Zem-Zem Well at Mecca. Spas and their Springs. Natural Mineral Table Waters. Thermal Springs and Radio-activity. Temperatures. Helium and Nitron in Mineral Waters. Measurement of Radio-activity. Artificial Radio-active Mineral Waters. Carbon Dioxide. Its Preparation, Properties, and Uses in the Mineral Water Factory. Artificial Mineral Waters. Evolution of Carbonating Apparatus. The Machinery of to-day: The Pump. Generators. Gas Tubes. Soda Water Machines. Combined Cooling, etc. Condensers. Soda Water Bottling Machinery. Arrangement of a Soda Water Factory. Bottles and Bottling Machinery. The Making of Ginger Beer. Examination of Mineral Waters: General Characteristics. The Pressure. Metallic Contaminations. Baslerioscopic Examinations. Injurious Fermentations—Ropiness.

The Manufacture of Paper.

By **R. W. Sindall, F.C.S.** *Illustrated.* Ex. Crown 8vo, 6/- net.

CONTENTS:—Preface. List of Illustrations. Historical Notice, Cellulose and Paper-Making Fibres. The Manufacture of Paper from Rags, Esparto and Straw. Wood Pulp and Wood Pulp Papers. Brown Papers and Boards. Special kinds of Paper. Chemicals used in Paper-making. The Process of "Beating." The Dyeing and Colouring of Paper Pulp. Paper Mill Machinery. The Deterioration of Paper. Bibliography. Index.

Glass Manufacture.

By **Walter Rosenhain**, Superintendent of the Department of Metallurgy in the National Physical Laboratory.

With Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS:—Preface. Physical and Chemical Properties of Glass. The Raw Materials of Glass Manufacture. Crucibles. Furnaces for the Fusion of Glass. The Process of Fusion. Processes used in the Working of Glass. Bottle Glass. Blown and Pressed Glass. Rolled or Plate Glass. Sheet and Crown Glass. Colored Glass. Optical Glass. Miscellaneous Products. Appendix.

Decorative Glass Processes.

By **Arthur Louis Duthie.** *Fully Illustrated.* Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS:—Introduction. Various Kinds of Glass in Use: Their Characteristics, Comparative Price, etc. Leaded Lights. Stained Glass. Embossed Glass. Brilliant Cutting and Beveling. Sand-Blast and Crystalline Glass. Gilding. Silvering and Mosaic. Proprietary Processes. Patents. Glossary.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The Manufacture of Leather.

By **Hugh Garner Bennett, M.Sc., F.C.S.**, Member of the International Association of Leather Trade Chemists.
Crown 8vo. Fully Illustrated. 16/- net.

Cotton.

By **Prof. C. W. Burkett and Clarence H. Poe.**
Fully Illustrated. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

Cotton Seed Products.

A MANUAL OF THE TREATMENT OF COTTON SEED FOR ITS PRODUCTS AND THEIR UTILIZATION IN THE ARTS.

By **Leebert Lloyd Lamborn**, Member of the American Chemical Society; Member of the Society of Chemical Industry. *With 79 Illustrations and a map. Demy 8vo. 12/6 net.*

Linseed Oil and other Seed Oils.

An Industrial Manual by **William D. Ennis, M.E., M.Am.Soc.M.E.**, Professor of Mechanical Engineering, Polytechnic Institute of Brooklyn. *Medium 8vo. Illustrated. 16/- net.*

CONTENTS.—Introductory. The Handling of Seed and the Disposition of Its Impurities. Grinding. Tempering the Ground Seed and Moulding the Press Cake. Pressing and Trimming the Cakes. Hydraulic Operative Equipment. The Treatment of the Oil from the Press to the Consumer. Preparation of the Cake for the Market. Oil Yield and Output. Shrinkage in Production. Cost of Production. Operation and Equipment of Typical Mills. Other Methods of Manufacturing. The Seed Crop. The Seed Trade. Chemical Characteristics of Linseed Oil. Boiled Oil. Refined and Special Oils. The Linseed Oil Market. The Feeding of Oil Cake. Miscellaneous Seed Oils. The Cotton-Seed Industry. Appendix. Glossary. Bibliographical Note.

Textiles and their Manufacture.

By **Aldred F. Barker, M.Sc.**

Fully Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS.—The History of the Textile Industries; also of Textile Inventions and Inventors. The Wool, Silk, Cotton, Flax, etc., Growing Industries. The Mercerized and Artificial Fibres Employed in the Textile Industries. The Dyeing of Textile Materials. The Principles of Spinning. Processes Preparatory to Spinning. The Principles of Weaving. The Principles of Designing and Colouring. The Principles of Finishing. Textile Calculations. The Woollen Industry. The Worsted Industry. The Dress-Goods, Stuff, and Linings Industry. The Tapestry and Carpet Industry. Silk Throwing and Spinning. The Cotton Industry. The Linen Industry Historically and Commercially Considered. Recent Developments and the Future of the Textile Industries.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any Book.

Glues and Gelatine.

A PRACTICAL TREATISE ON THE METHODS OF TESTING AND USE. BY **R. Livingston Fernbach**. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

Agglutinants and Adhesives of All Kinds for all Purposes. BY **H. C. Standage**. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.

The Chemistry of the Rubber Industry.

BY **Harold E. Potts, M.Sc.** 5/- net. (See p. 38.)

India-Rubber and its Manufacture, with Chapters on Gutta-Percha and Balata.

BY **H. L. Terry, F.I.C., Assoc.Inst.M.M.**

With Illustrations. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Nitrocellulose Industry.

BY **Edward Chauncey Warden, Ph.C., M.A., F.C.S.**

2 vols. 1,240 pages. 324 Illustrations. Sm. 4to. 42/- net. (See p. 38.)

Materials for Permanent Painting.

BY **M. Toch, F.C.S.** Frontispiece in Colour and other Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7/6 net.

A manual for manufacturers, art dealers, artists and collectors explaining the composition of the materials used in painting.

The Basic Open-Hearth Steel Process.

BY **Carl Dichmann**. (See p. 15.)

Wood Pulp. BY **Charles F. Cross, B.Sc., F.I.C.**; **E. J. Bevan, F.I.C.**, and **R. W. Sindall, F.C.S.**

Fully Illustrated. 6/- net.

CONTENTS.—The Structural Elements of Wood. Cellulose as a Chemical. Sources of Supply. Mechanical Wood Pulp. Chemical Wood Pulp. The Bleaching of Wood Pulp. News and Printings. Wood Pulp Boards. Utilisation of Wood Waste. Testing of Wood Pulp for Moisture. Wood Pulp and the Textile Industries. Bibliography. Index.

History of the Frozen Meat Trade.

BY **J. C. Critchell** and **J. Raymond**. 10/6 net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Arts and Crafts

Simple Jewellery.

A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK WITH CERTAIN ELEMENTARY METHODS OF DESIGN AND CONSTRUCTION, WRITTEN FOR THE USE OF CRAFTSMEN, DESIGNERS, STUDENTS AND TEACHERS. BY **R. LI. B. Rathbone.**

Ex. Crown 8vo. 94 Illustrations. Second Impression. 6/- net.

The Potter's Craft.

A PRACTICAL GUIDE FOR THE STUDIO AND WORKSHOP. BY **Charles F. Binns**, late Superintendent Royal Porcelain Works, Worcester. *With 42 Illustrations.*

Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Precious Stones.

BY **W. Goodchild, M.B., B.Ch.** With 42 Illustrations. WITH A CHAPTER ON ARTIFICIAL STONES. BY **Robert Dykes.** *Illustrated. Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.*

Enamelling. On the Theory and Practice of

Third Edition.

Art Enamelling upon Metals. BY **Henry Cunyng-
hame, M.A., C.B.** *Two Coloured Plates and 20 Illustrations.*

Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

Useful Handbooks and Tables

The Practical Mechanic's Handbook. *(See p. 39.)*

BY **F. E. Smith.**

Materials used in Sizing. *(See p. 39.)*

BY **W. F. A. Ermen.**

Reference Book for Statical Calculations.

BY **Francis Ruff.**

Crown 8vo. 160 Illustrations. Charts and Diagrams. 4/- net.

Handbook for the Care and Operation of

Naval Machinery. BY **Lieut. H. C. Dinger, U.S. Navy.**

Cloth. 302 Pages. 124 Illustrations. Pocket size. Price 7/6 net.

Pricing of Quantities.

SHOWING A PRACTICAL SYSTEM OF PREPARING AN ESTIMATE FROM BILLS OF QUANTITIES. BY **George Stephenson**, Author of "Repairs" "Quantities," etc.

Demy 8vo. 8/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

The Law affecting Engineers.

By **W. Valentine Ball, M.A. (Cantab.)**, Barrister-at-Law,
Joint Editor of "Emden's Building Contracts."

Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

A concise statement of the powers and duties of an engineer, as between employer and contractor, as arbitrator and as expert witness, together with an outline of the law relating to engineering contracts, and an appendix of forms of contract, with explanatory notes.

Tables of Multiplication, Division and Proportion: For the Ready Calculation of Quantities and Costs, Estimates, Weights and Strengths, Wages and Wage Premiums.

By **Prof. R. H. Smith, A.M.Inst.C.E., M.I.E.E.**, etc. *2/6 net.*

Lettering.

*9th Edition,
Revised and Enlarged.*

FOR DRAUGHTSMEN, ENGINEERS AND STUDENTS.

By **Chas. W. Reinhardt.** *4/- net.*

The New Steam Tables. Calculated from Professor Callendar's Researches.

By **Professor C. A. M. Smith, M.Sc.**, and **A. G. Warren, S.Sc.** *4/- net.*

Natural History, Botany, Nature Study, etc.

Natural History in Zoological Gardens.

BEING SOME ACCOUNT OF VERTEBRATED ANIMALS, WITH SPECIAL REFERENCE TO THOSE USUALLY TO BE SEEN IN THE ZOOLOGICAL SOCIETY'S GARDENS IN LONDON AND SIMILAR INSTITUTIONS. By **Frank E. Beddard, F.R.S.**, etc. Illustrated by **Gambier Bolton** and **Winifred Austen.** *Crown 8vo. 3/6 net. New and Cheaper Edition.*

Extinct Animals.

By **Sir E. Ray Lankester, F.R.S.**

With a Portrait of the Author and 218 other Illustrations. New and Revised Edition. Demy 8vo. 3/6 net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

From an Easy Chair.

By **Sir E. Ray Lankester, F.R.S.**

Crown 8vo. Paper, 1/- net; Cloth, 2/- net.

These informal talks on scientific matters that are recurring in general conversation, range over a wide variety of subjects. It is a book to be dipped into in leisure moments; for though its subject-matter is for the most part scientific every word is readable and instructive.

The Stone Age in North America.

By **Warren K. Moorhead.**

In 2 Volumes. 900 pages. With about 700 Illustrations, including 6 in Colour, 12 in Photogravure and Several Maps. Crown 4to. 31s. 6d. net.

An archaeological encyclopædia of the implements, ornaments, weapons, utensils, etc., of the prehistoric tribes of North America. The work is the result of twenty years' exploration and study.

Distribution and Origin of Life in America.

By **R. F. Scharff, B.Sc., Ph.D., F.L.S.**

Numerous Illustrations. Large Crown 8vo. 10/6 net.

European Animals: Their Geological History and their Geographical Distribution.

By **R. F. Scharff, B.Sc., Ph.D., F.L.S.**

Numerous Illustrations. Large Crown 8vo. 7/6 net.

The Nature Student's Note Book.

By **Rev. Canon Steward, M.A., and Alice E. Mitchell.**

Containing Nature Notes, Diary, Classification of Plants, Trees, Animals, and Insects in detail.

Interleaved with writing paper. Foolscap 8vo. 2/- net.

Fishes, A Guide to the Study of.

By **David Starr Jordan**, President of Leland Stanford Junior University. *With Coloured Frontispieces and 427 Illustrations.*

In 2 Volumes. Folio. 50/- net.

American Insects.

By **Professor Vernon L. Kellogg.** With many original

Illustrations by **Mary Wellman.** *Square 8vo. 21/- net.*

Life Histories of Northern Animals. An Account of the Mammals of Manitoba.

By **Ernest Thompson Seton**, Naturalist to the Government of Manitoba.

In two volumes. Large 8vo. Over 600 pages each. With 70 Maps and 600 Drawings by the Author. Price 73/6 the set. Prospectus on application.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange, Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

*Natural History, Botany, Nature Study,
etc.—continued.*

Influences of Geographic Environment.

By **E. C. Semple**, Author of "American History and its Geographic Conditions."

Med. 8vo. 700 pages. 18/- net.

CONTENTS:—Preface. Operation of Geographic Factors in History. Classes of Geographic Influences. Society and State in Relation to Land. Movements of Peoples in their Geographical Significance. Geographical Location. Geographical Area. Geographical Boundaries. Coast Peoples. Oceans and Enclosed Seas. Man's Relation to the Water. The Anthro-Geography of Rivers. Continents and their Peninsulas. Island Peoples. Plains, Steppes and Deserts. Mountain Barriers and their Passes. Influences of a Mountain Environment. The Influences of Climate upon Man. Index.

Outlines of Evolutionary Biology.

By **Arthur Dendy, D.Sc., F.R.S.**, Professor of Zoology in the University of London (King's College); Zoological Secretary of the Linnean Society of London; Honorary Member of the New Zealand Institute; formerly Professor of Biology in the Canterbury College (University of New Zealand), and Professor of Zoology in the South African College, Cape Town. *Second Edition, enlarged, and with a Glossary. Fully Illustrated. 12/6 net.*

CONTENTS:—The Structure and Functions of Organisms. The Cell Theory. The Evolution of Sex. Variation and Heredity. The Theory and Evidence of Organic Evolution. Adaptation. Factors of Organic Evolution. Glossary of Technical Terms.

Plant Physiology and Ecology.

By **Frederic Edward Clements, Ph.D.**, Professor of Botany in the University of Minnesota. With 125 Illustrations.

Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

Indian Trees.

AN ACCOUNT OF TREES, SHRUBS, WOODY CLIMBERS, BAMBOOS AND PALMS, INDIGENOUS OR COMMONLY CULTIVATED IN THE BRITISH INDIAN EMPIRE.

By **Sir Dietrich Brandis, K.C.I.E., Ph.D. (Bonn), LL.D. (Edin.), F.R.S., F.L.S., F.R.G.S.**, and Hon. Member of the Royal Scottish Arboricultural Society, of the Society of American Foresters, and of the Pharmaceutical Society of Great Britain. Assisted by Indian Foresters.

With many Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 16/- net. Third Impression.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street, Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Agriculture and Farming

Wool Growing and the Tariff.

A STUDY IN THE ECONOMIC HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

By **Chester Whitney Wright, Ph.D.** *Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.*

Soils and Manures. By **J. Alan Murray, B.Sc.**

With Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 6/- net.

CONTENTS.—Preface. Introductory. The Origin of Soils. Physical Properties of Soils. Chemistry of Soils. Biology of Soils. Fertility. Principles of Manuring. Phosphatic Manures. Phospho-Nitrogenous Manures. Nitrogenous Manures. Potash Manures. Compound and Miscellaneous Manures. General Manures. Farmyard Manure. Valuation of Manures. Composition and Manurial Value of Various Farm Foods. Index.

Soils: How to Handle and Improve Them.

By **S. W. Fletcher.**

Upwards of 100 Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

To Work a Grass Holding at a Living Profit, and the Cheap Cottage Problem.

By **H. B. M. Buchanan, B.A.** *Crown 8vo. 1/- net.*

The First Book of Farming.

By **Charles L. Goodrich.** *With 85 Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.*

Farm Management.

By **F. W. Card,** Professor of Agriculture.

66 Full-page Illustrations and numerous useful Tables and Returns. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

Farm Animals : How to Breed, Feed, Care for and Use them. By **E. V. Willcox, Ph.D., M.A., U.S.A.** Department of Agriculture.

With over 60 full-page Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 8/6 net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Law, Patents, etc.

Building in London.

By **Horace Cubitt, A.R.I.B.A., etc.**

A Treatise on the Law and Practice affecting the Erection and Maintenance of Buildings in the Metropolis, with Special Chapters dealing respectively with the Cost of Building Work in and around London by H. J. LEANING, F.S.I., and the Valuation and Management of London Property by SYDNEY A. SMITH, F.S.I.; also the Statutes, Bye-laws and Regulations applying in London; cross-references throughout.

Illustrated, with diagrams. Royal 8vo. 31/6 net.

Industrial Accidents and their Compensation.

By **G. L. Campbell, B.S.** *Crown 8vo. 4/- net.*

The Law affecting Engineers.

By **W. Valentine Ball, M.A. (Cantab.),** Barrister-at-Law,
Joint Editor of "Emden's Building Contracts."

Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

A concise statement of the powers and duties of an engineer, as between employer and contractor, as arbitrator and as expert witness, together with an outline of the law relating to engineering contracts, and an appendix of forms of contract, with explanatory notes.

Foreign and Colonial Patent Laws.

By **W. Cranston Fairweather,** Chartered Patent Agent.

Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

This is a compendium of Patent practice in every British possession and in every foreign country which appears on the map. The information given is in large part obtained from official sources, and is presented in a series of articles—one for each State—revised so far as is possible by agents practising in the States in question.

Patents, Designs and Trade Marks: The Law and Commercial Usage.

By **Kenneth R. Swan, B.A. (Oxon.),** of the Inner Temple,
Barrister-at-Law.

Ex. Crown 8vo. 6/- net.

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Miscellaneous.

The Arbitration Clause in Engineering and Building Contracts.

By E. J. Rimmer (Barrister-at-Law), M.Inst.C.E.,
etc. 2/- net.

Miscellaneous

Spanish-English, English-Spanish Dictionary
of Railway Terms.

By André Garcia. 12/6 net.

Forecasting Weather. By W. N. Shaw, F.R.S., Sc.D.,

Director of the Meteorological Office, London.

Illustrated with Maps, Charts and Diagrams. Demy 8vo. 10/6 net.

From the Introduction: "The arrangement which has been followed in this work is first to explain and illustrate the construction and use of synoptic charts and the method of forecasting by their means. I have dealt with special departments of the work of forecasting, such as gales and storm-warnings, anti-cyclonic weather, land and sea fogs, night frosts, colliery warnings, forecasts for aeronauts. . . . A chapter has been devoted to statistical methods for long period and seasonal forecasts."

Motion Study :

A METHOD FOR INCREASING THE EFFICIENCY OF THE WORKMAN.

By F. B. Gilbreth, M.Am.Soc.M.E. 4/6 net.

Primer of Scientific Management.

By F. B. Gilbreth, M.Am.Soc.M.E., with an Introduction
by LOUIS D. BRANDEIS. 4/- net.

Seasonal Trades.

By Arnold Freeman. 7/6 net.

How to do Business by Letter and Advertising.

By Sherwin Cody. 5/- net.

* * * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

Modern Astronomy.

Second Edition.

BEING SOME ACCOUNT OF THE REVOLUTION OF THE LAST
QUARTER OF THE CENTURY.

BY **Prof. H. H. Turner, F.R.S.** *Illustrated. Cr. 8vo. 2/6 net.*

Time and Clocks :

A DESCRIPTION OF ANCIENT AND MODERN METHODS OF
MEASURING TIME. BY **H. H. Cunynghame, M.A., C.B.**

Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 2/6 net.

International Language and Science.

CONSIDERATIONS ON THE INTRODUCTION OF AN INTERNATIONAL
LANGUAGE INTO SCIENCE.

Translated by **Prof. F. G. Donnan.** *Demy 8vo. 2/- net.*

The Seven Follies of Science. BY **John Phin.**

A new and enlarged Edition. With numerous Illustrations. Demy 8vo. 5/- net.

A popular account of the most famous scientific impossibilities, and the attempts which have been made to solve them. To which is added a small budget of interesting paradoxes, illusions, and marvels.

Public Ownership of Telephones.

BY **A. N. Holcombe.** *8vo. 8/6 net.*

"We commend this book to the notice of all interested in the study of telephone development and administration."—*Electricity.*

Good Engineering Literature. BY **Harwood Frost,**

M.Am.Soc.M.E.

Crown 8vo. 4/6 net.

Essays Biographical and Chemical.

BY **Professor Sir William Ramsay, K.C.B., LL.D., F.R.S.,
D.Sc., etc.** *Demy 8vo. 7/6 net.*

* * Write to Messrs. Constable & Co., Ltd., 10, Orange Street,
Leicester Square, for full particulars of any book.

BEDROCK

A Quarterly Review
of Scientific Thought.

2s. 6d. net.

ANNUAL SUBSCRIPTION,
For the United Kingdom, 11/-;
For Abroad, 12/- (12 marks 50pf.; 15f. 25c.)

Editorial Committee :

Sir BRYAN DONKIN, M.D. (Oxon.), F.R.C.P. (Lond.), late Physician and
Lecturer on Medicine at Westminster Hospital, etc.

E. B. POULTON, LL.D., D.Sc., F.R.S., Hope Professor of Zoology in the
University of Oxford.

G. ARCHDALL REID, M.B., F.R.S.E.

H. H. TURNER, D.Sc., D.C.L., F.R.S., Savilian Professor of Astronomy in
the University of Oxford.

Acting Editor: H. B. GRILLS.

Some of the Articles that have appeared.

THE WARFARE AGAINST TUBERCULOSIS. By Elie Metchnikoff.

ON PSYCHICAL RESEARCH. By Sir Ray Lankester, K.C.B.,
F.R.S.; Sir Bryan Donkin, M.D., F.R.C.P.; Sir Oliver
Lodge, F.R.S.

THE STARS IN THEIR COURSES. By H. H. Turner, F.R.S.

MORE DAYLIGHT SAVING. By Professor Hubrecht, F.M.Z.S.,
F.M.L.S.

RECENT DISCOVERIES OF ANCIENT HUMAN REMAINS AND
THEIR BEARING ON THE ANTIQUITY OF MAN. By A.
Keith, M.D., F.R.C.S.

VALUE OF A LOGIC OF METHOD. By Professor J. Welton, M.A.

DARWIN AND BERGSON ON THE INTERPRETATION OF EVOLUTION.
By E. B. Poulton, LL.D., D.Sc., F.R.S.

PLEOCHROIC HALOES. By J. Joly, F.R.S.

MODERN VITALISM. By Hugh S. Elliot.

RECENT RESEARCHES IN ALCOHOLISM. By G. Archdall
Reid, M.B.

INDEX OF TITLES

- ADJUSTMENT OF OBSERVATIONS, 24
 Aerated Waters, 40
 Aerial Flight, 18
 Aeroplane Patents, 19
 Aeroplanes (D.-S.), 19
 Agglutinants and Adhesives, 42
 Airships, Past and Present, 19
 Animals, Life Histories of Northern, 45
 Appliances, Mechanical, 13
 Arbitration Clause in Engineering and Building Contracts, 49
 Arc Lamps and Accessory Apparatus, 6
 Art of Illumination, 32
 Astronomy, Modern, 50
 Basic Open-Hearth Steel Process, 15
 Bedrock, 51
 Bells, Indicators, Telephones, etc., 6
 Bleaching and Dyeing of Vegetable Fibrous Materials, Chemistry of, 37
 Biology, Outlines of Evolutionary, 46
 Boiler Construction, 11
 Boiler Draught, 11
 Boiler Efficiencies, Engine Tests and, 11
 Boiler Explosions, Collapses, and Mishaps, 10
 Boilers, Marine Double-ended, 19
 Boilers, Steam, 11
 Book, The (History, etc.), 7
 Bridges, The Design of Simple Steel, 21
 Bridges, Reinforced Concrete, 22
 Building in London, 48
 Building Materials, Introduction to the Chemistry and Physics of, 36
 Business, How to do, by Letter and Advertising, 49
 Calculus, The, and its Applications, 38
 Cams, 14
 Cement, Concrete and, 23
 Centrifugal Pumps, 15
 Chemical Annual, Van Nostrand's, 36
 Chemical Re-Agents, 36
 Chemical Theory and Calculations, 34
 Chemistry and Physics of Building Materials, Introduction to the, 36
 Chemistry of Bleaching and Dyeing, etc., 37
 Chemistry, Industrial, 33
 Chemistry of the Oil Industry, 39
 Chemistry of the Rubber Industry, 38
 Coal, 13
 Coal Tar Dyes, Chemistry of, 37
 Cold Storage, Heating and Ventilating on Board Ship, 19
 Colloidal and Crystalloidal State of Matter, 38
 Compressed Air, 15
 Concrete and Cement, 23
 Concrete (Reinforced) in Sub and Superstructure (D.-S.), 4
 Contemporary Chemistry, 37
 Continuous Current Engineering, 31
 Corpuscular Theory of Matter, 34
 Cotton, 41
 Cotton Seed Products, 41
 Cranes, 13
 Dairy Laboratory Guide, 37
 Deinhardt-Schlomann Technical Dictionaries in Six Languages, 4
 Designing, Theory and Practice of, 24
 Dies, 14
 Diesel Engine for Land and Marine Purpose, 8
 Direct and Alternating Currents, 31
 Dust Destroyers (Small), for Institutional and Trade Refuse, 25
 Dynamics of Mechanical Flight, 18
 Earth Slopes, Retaining Walls and Dams, 23
 Elastic Arch, The, 23
 Electrical Machinery, Testing, 31
 Electric Central Station Distribution Systems (American), 29
 Electric Cables and Networks (Theory), 31
 Electric Currents, Propagation of, in Telephone and Telegraph Conductors, 27
 Electric Furnaces, 32
 Electric Installation Manuals, 6
 Electric Lamps, 32
 Electric Mechanism, 28
 Electric Mining Installations, 6
 Electric Power to Mines, etc., Application of, 28
 Electric Power and Traction, 30
 Electric Power Transmission, 30
 Electric Railways, 25
 Electric Railway Engineering, 29
 Electrical Engineering (D.-S.), 4
 Electrical Engineering, Heavy, 29
 Electrical Engineer's Pocket Book, "Foster," 29
 Electrical Measuring Instruments (Industrial), 30
 Electrical Nature of Matter and Radio-Activity, 34
 Electricity (Hobart), 29
 Electricity and Matter, 34
 Electricity through Gases (Discharge of), 34
 Electro-Chemistry, Experimental, 31
 Electro-Chemistry, Practical, 32
 Electro-Metallurgy, 34
 Enamelling, 43
 Energy Diagram for Gas, 9
 Engine Tests and Boiler Efficiencies, 11
 Engineering Literature, Good, 50

INDEX OF TITLES—*continued.*

- Engineering Workshops, Machines and Processes, 14
 Engineers, The Law Affecting, 48
 English-Spanish Dictionary, 49
 Entropy, 32
 Essays, Biographical & Chemical, 50
 European Animals, 45
 Extinct Animals, 44
 Farm Animals, 47
 Farming, First Book of, 47
 Farm Management, 47
 Field Engineer, 21
 Fishes, A Guide to the Study of, 45
 Flight, Dynamics of Mechanical, 18
 Food Adulterants, Detection of, 37
 Foundations and Fixing Machinery, 6
 Foundry Practice, General, 16
 From an Easy Chair, 45
 Frozen Meat Trade, History of the, 42
 Fuel, Gas and Water Analysis, etc., 12
 Fuel, Introduction to the Study of, 12
 Fuels, Liquid and Gaseous, 12
 Furnaces, Electric, 32
 Gas, Energy Diagram for, 9
 Gas Engine, 9
 Gas Engine Construction, 9
 Gas Engine Design, 9
 Gas Engineering Practice (American), 9
 Gas, Gasoline, and Oil Engines, etc., 9
 Gas (Town) and its Uses, 10
 Gas Works Plant and Machinery, British Progress in, 10
 Geographic Environment, Influences of, 46
 Glasgow Text-Books of Civil Engineering, 2
 Glass Manufacture, 40
 Glass Processes, Decorative, 40
 Glues and Gelatine, 42
 Graphic Statics, Elements of, and General Graphic Method, 19
 Grass Holding, To Work a, 47
 Hardening, Tempering, etc., of Steel, 17
 Heat Engines, Vapours for, 35
 Heat Power Plants, Economic and Commercial Theory of, 14
 Hydraulics (D.-S. Series), 4
 Hydraulics, Text-Book of, 20
 Hydraulics and its Applications, 20
 Hydro-electric Developments and Engineering, 30
 Identification of Organic Compounds, 37
 Illumination, Art of, 32
 India-Rubber and its Manufacture, 42
 Industrial Accidents and Their Compensation, 48
 Industrial Chemistry, 33
 Industrial Chemistry, Outlines of, 3
 Industrial Electrical Measuring Instruments, 30
 Inorganic Chemistry, Practical Methods of, 37
 Insects, American, 45
 Integration by Trigonometric and Imaginary Substitution, 38
 Internal Combustion Engine (Wimperis), 8
 Internal Combustion Engines (D.-S.), 4
 Internal Combustion Engines, Construction and Working of (Mathot), 8
 Internal Combustion Engines, Design and Construction (Güldner), 8
 Internal Combustion Engine, A Primer of, 8
 International Language and Science, 50
 Ionization of Gases by Collision, The Theory of, 34
 Iron and Steel (Hudson), 16
 Iron and Steel (Stansbie), 17
 Irrigation, 26
 Irrigation Works, 26
 Irrigation Works. Notes on, 27
 Irrigation Works. Practical Design, 26
 Laboratory and Factory Tests, 31
 Law affecting Engineers, 48
 Leather, Manufacture of, 41
 Lettering, 44
 Life in America, Distribution and Origin of, 43
 Linseed Oil and other Seed Oils, 41
 Liquid Air and the Liquefaction of Gases, 36
 Liquid and Gaseous Fuels, 12
 Liquid Fuel and Its Apparatus, 12
 Liquid Fuel and its Combustion, 12
 Locomotive, The Railway, 21
 Machine Design, 13
 Machinery, etc., Elements of (D.-S.), 4
 Machinery, Hoisting and Conveying (D.-S.), 4
 Machine Tools (D.-S.), 4
 Machine Tools, Modern American, 14
 Malleable Cast Iron, 16
 Marine Double-ended Boilers, 11
 Marine Engine Design, 19
 Materials, Handbook of Testing, 13
 Materials, Mechanics of, 13
 Mathematics for the Practical Man, 39
 Mechanical Appliances, 13
 Mechanical Movements, Powers, etc., 13
 Mechanics of Materials, Elements of, 13
 Mechanic's Handbook, 39
 Metallurgy (D.-S.), 4
 Microscopy, Principles of, 35
 Mill and Factory Wiring, 6

INDEX OF TITLES—*continued.*

- Mineral and Aerated Waters, 40
 Mines, Application of Electric Power to, 28
 Modern Sanitary Engineering, 25
 Motion Study, 24
 Motor Car Engineering, Text-Book of, 17
 Motor Pocket Book (O'Gorman's), 18
 Motors, Secondary Batteries, Measuring Instruments, and Switch Gear, 6
 Motors, Single-phase Commutator, *see* Electric Mechanism
 Motor Vehicles (D.-S.), 18
 Municipal and Sanitary Engineering Encyclopædia, 5
 Municipal Engineering, British Progress in, 25
 Natural History in Zoological Gardens, 44
 Nature Student's Note-Book, 45
 Naval Machinery, Care and Operation of, 19
 Nitro-Cellulose Industry, 38, 42
 Oil Industry, Chemistry of, 39
 Outlines of Industrial Chemistry, 3
 Painting, Materials for Permanent, 42
 Paints and Paint Vehicles, The Chemistry of, 36
 Paper, Manufacture of, 40
 Patent Laws, Foreign and Colonial, 48
 Patents, Designs & Trade Marks, 48
 Photography, 7
 Photography (Telegraphic), 28
 Physical Chemistry, Exercises in, 36
 Physical Chemistry, Problems in, 33
 Physics, A Text-Book of, 36
 Plant Physiology and Ecology, 46
 Potters' Craft, 43
 Power, Natural Sources of, 15
 Power Production, Refuse Disposal, 25
 Practical Mechanics Handbook, 39
 Precious Metals, 17
 Precious Stones, 43
 Precision Grinding, 14
 Pricing of Quantities, 24
 Propagation of Electric Currents in Telephone and Telegraph Conductors, 27
 Pumps and Pumping Engines, British Progress in, 15
 Pumps, Centrifugal, 15
 Quaternions, as the Result of Algebraic Operations, 39
 Radio-Active Transformations, 34
 Radio-Activity and Geology, 34
 Radio-Telegraphy, 27
 Railway Construction and Operation (D.-S.), 4
 Railway Locomotive, 21
 Railway Rolling Stock (D.-S.), 4
 Railway Shop Up-to-date, 21
 Railway Signal Engineering (Mechanical), 21
 Railway Structures, Reinforced Concrete, 21
 Railway Terms, Dictionary of, 49
 Rainfall, Reservoirs and Water Supply, 26
 Refuse Disposal and Power Production, 25
 Reinforced Concrete (Marsh), 23
 Reinforced Concrete Bridges, 22
 Reinforced Concrete, Compression Member Diagram, 22
 Reinforced Concrete, Concise Treatise on, 22
 Reinforced Concrete, Manual of, 22
 Reinforced Concrete, Properties, &c., 22
 Reinforced Concrete in Sub- and Superstructure (D.-S.), 4
 Reinforced Concrete Railway Structures, 21
 Rubber Industry, Chemistry of the, 38
 Sanitary Engineering (Modern), 25
 Science, Seven Follies of, 50
 Scientific Management, 49
 Searchlights: Their Theory, Construction and Application, 31
 Seasonal Trades, 49
 Sewage Discharge Diagrams, Water Pipe and, 20
 Sewage Disposal Works, 25
 Ship Wiring and Fitting, 6
 Shop Kinks, 14
 Simple Jewellery, 43
 Sizing, Materials used in, 39
 Small Dust Destructors, 25
 Smoke Prevention, 12
 Soils, 47
 Soils and Manures, 47
 Solenoids, Electromagnets, etc., 29
 Stannaries, The, 17
 Static Transformers, The Design of, 29
 Static Calculations, Reference Book for, 43
 Steam Boilers, 11
 Steam Boilers and Steam Engines (D.-S.), 4
 Steam-Electric Power Plants, 30
 Steam Engine, Modern, 10
 Steam Pipes, 11
 Steam (Flow of) through Nozzles, etc., 11
 Steam Tables, The New, 11
 Steam Turbines, 10
 Steel, Basic Open-Hearth Process, 15
 Steel Bridges, The Design of Simple, 21
 Steel, Hardening, Tempering, Annealing and Forging, 17

INDEX OF TITLES—*continued.*

- Steel, Iron and (Hudson), 16
 Steel, Iron and (Stansbie), 17
 Steel, Welding and Cutting, etc., 17
 Stone Age (The) in North America, 45
 Structural Design, The Elements of,
 23
 Superheat, Superheating, etc., 11
 Surveying, 24
 Switches and Switchgear, 28
 Tables, Quantities, Costs, Estimates,
 Wages, etc. (Prof. Smith), 44
 Telegraphic Transmission of Photo-
 graphs, 28
 Telegraphy (Wireless), Maxwell's
 Theory and, 27
 Telephones, Public Ownership of, 28
 Testing, Handbook of (Materials), 13
 Testing and Localising Faults, 6
 Textiles and their Manufacture, 41
 Theory and Practice of Designing, 24
 Thermodynamics, Technical, 33
 Thermodynamics, A Text-Book of, 33
 Thermodynamics for Engineers,
 Applied, 32
 Thermodynamics to Chemistry,
 Experimental and Theoretical
 Application of, 35
 Timber, 24
 Time and Clocks, 50
 Toll Telephone Practice, 27
 Trees, Indian, 46
 Tunnel Practice (Modern), 23
 Turbine Practice and Water Power
 Plants, 20
 Turbines applied to Marine Propul-
 sion, 20
 Turbines (Steam), 10
 Una-flow Steam Engine, 10
 Vapours for Heat Engines, 35
 Water Hammer in Hydraulic Pipe
 Lines, 20
 Water Pipe and Sewage Discharge
 Diagrams, 20
 Water Power Plants, Modern Turbine
 Practice, 20
 Water Softening and Treatment, 13
 Water Supply, Rainfall, Reservoirs
 and, 26
 Weather, Forecasting, 49
 Welding and Cutting Steel by Gases
 or Electricity, 17
 Westminster Series, 7
 Wireless Telegraphy, Maxwell's
 Theory and, 27
 Wiring of Buildings, Internal, 31
 Wood Pulp, 42
 Wool Growing and the Tariff, 47

U. C. BERKELEY LIBRARIES



C048124478

QA

481

H5

MATH

MATH
STAT.
LIBRARY

